

北京航空航天大学

矩阵理论 A 笔记

任课教师：赵迪

编辑：张京蕊

写在前边

编者按：矩阵理论 A 课程是我校一门研究生公共课程，本人特将 2008 年秋季本课程赵迪老师大班的笔记整理成电子版，以供后人学习、参考之用。本笔记包括七大部分，编号从零至六。

众所周知，赵老师上课从不用课件，完全是板书，所以选这门课程的同学每堂课必然要仔仔细细的记笔记，虽然我把赵老师这门课程的笔记整理成了电子版，但仍不鼓励大家拿着打印稿，不记笔记，甚至不去上课。俗话说：“好记性不如烂笔头。”勤奋一些，平时认认真真把笔记记清，可以巩固对这门课程知识的记忆，为以后考试和应用打好基础，事半功倍。

同时严正声明：禁止将此笔记用于任何商业用途。虽然这个电子版是我搞出来的，但我仍认为这套笔记的版权应该归赵老师或者北航理学院所有，希望同学不要因贪小利而忘大义。

最后，希望这份电子版的笔记能够给同学们学习这门课程带来方便，祝同学们在北航生活、学习、工作愉快！

目录

§ 0	补充公式.....	1
§ 1	Jordan (约当) 标准形 (简介)	11
§ 2	线性变换与矩阵.....	24
§ 3	欧式空间与 QR 分解.....	48
§ 4	常用矩阵分解.....	74
§ 5	范数与级数.....	81
§ 6	广义逆 A^+	97
§ 7	直积拉直及应用.....	105

§0 补充公式

令 $A = (a_{ij})_{n \times n} \in C^{n \times n}$, $f(x) = a_0 + a_1x + \cdots + a_mx^m$

定义 $f(A) = a_0I + a_1A + \cdots + a_mA^m$, 其中 $I = I_n = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & \cdots & 1 \end{pmatrix}$

若 $g(x) = b_0 + b_1x + \cdots + b_kx^k$, $f(x) \cdot g(x) = g(x) \cdot f(x)$, 则 $f(A) \cdot g(A) = g(A) \cdot f(A)$

分块公式

令 $A = \begin{pmatrix} A_1 & 0 \\ 0 & A_2 \end{pmatrix}$, A_1, A_2 为方阵

则: (1) $A^k = \begin{pmatrix} A_1^k & 0 \\ 0 & A_2^k \end{pmatrix}$

(2) $f(A) = \begin{pmatrix} f(A_1) & 0 \\ 0 & f(A_2) \end{pmatrix}$, $f(x)$ 为多项式

令 $A = \begin{pmatrix} A_1 & & (*) \\ & A_2 & \\ & & \ddots \\ 0 & & & A_s \end{pmatrix}$, A_1, \dots, A_s 为方阵

则: (1) $A^k = \begin{pmatrix} A_1^k & & (*) \\ & A_2^k & \\ & & \ddots \\ 0 & & & A_s^k \end{pmatrix}$

(2) $f(A) = \begin{pmatrix} f(A_1) & & (*) \\ & f(A_2) & \\ & & \ddots \\ 0 & & & f(A_s) \end{pmatrix}$

相似关系: $A \sim B$, $(P^{-1}AP = B)$

则: (1) $(P^{-1}AP)^k = P^{-1}A^kP$, $(k=0,1,2,\dots)$

(2) $f(P^{-1}AP) = P^{-1}f(A)P$, $f(x)$ 为多项式

舒尔公式 (schur): 每个复方阵, $A = (a_{ij})_{n \times n}$ 都相似于上三角形。

$$\text{即: } P^{-1}AP = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & (*) \\ & \lambda_2 & \\ & & \ddots \\ 0 & & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix}, \text{ 其中 } \lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n \text{ 的次序可以任意指定}$$

Pf: 用归纳法

$n=1$ 时成立

可以设为 $(n=1)$ 阶方阵成立

对于 n 阶方阵 $A = (a_{ij})_{n \times n}$ 设特征值为 $\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n$

取 λ_1 对应的特征向量, 记为 $\alpha_1 \neq 0$, $A\alpha_1 = \lambda_1\alpha_1$

把 α_1 扩展为可逆方阵 $Q = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n)$

$$\therefore Q^T Q = I_n = (e_1, e_2, \dots, e_n)$$

$$\text{又 } \therefore Q^{-1}(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n) = (Q^{-1}\alpha_1, Q^{-1}\alpha_2, \dots, Q^{-1}\alpha_n)$$

$$\text{其中 } Q^{-1}\alpha_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = e_1, \quad Q^{-1}\alpha_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = e_2, \quad \dots, \quad Q^{-1}\alpha_n = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ \vdots \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = e_n$$

$$\begin{aligned} Q^{-1}AQ &= Q^{-1}A(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n) \\ &= Q^{-1}(A\alpha_1, A\alpha_2, \dots, A\alpha_n) \\ &= Q^{-1}(\lambda_1\alpha_1, \dots, *, *, *) \\ &= (\lambda_1 Q^{-1}\alpha_1, (*), \dots, (*)) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore &= \left(\begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 \\ 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \vdots \\ \vdots \\ \vdots \\ \vdots \end{pmatrix} \dots \begin{pmatrix} \vdots \\ \vdots \\ \vdots \\ \vdots \end{pmatrix} \right), \text{ 其中 } A_1 \text{ 为 } (n-1) \text{ 阶} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & (*) \\ 0 & A_1 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \text{由假设, 对于 } A_1 \text{ 必有 } (n-1) \text{ 阶 } P_1, \text{ 可推出 } P^{-1}AP = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & * \\ & \ddots & \\ 0 & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix}$$

\therefore 得证。

Eg. 知 n 阶方阵 A , 适合 $A^k = 0$, 则 $|A + I| = 1$

Pf: $A^k = 0 \Rightarrow$ 任意特征值 $\lambda^k = 0 \Rightarrow \lambda = 0$

即全体特征值为 $0, 0, \dots, 0$

$$\text{由需要 } P^{-1}AP = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & & * \\ & \ddots & \\ 0 & & 0 \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow |P^{-1}AP + I| = 1$$

$$\because |P^{-1}AP + P^{-1}IP| = |P^{-1}(A + I)P| = |A + I| \Rightarrow |A + I| = 1$$

注: (1) 若 $A \sim B$ (相似), 则 A, B 有相同特征值 $\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n$

可引入记号: 谱集 $\sigma(A) = \{\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n\}$ (全体特征值, 含重复)

$$\therefore A \sim B \Rightarrow \sigma(A) = \sigma(B)$$

(2) $A \sim B \Rightarrow |\lambda I - A| = |\lambda I - B| = (\lambda - \lambda_1)(\lambda - \lambda_2) \cdots (\lambda - \lambda_n)$, 特征多项式

$$\because P^{-1}AP = B \Rightarrow |\lambda I - A| = |P^{-1}(\lambda I - A)P| = |\lambda I - B|$$

引理: 若 $A = \begin{pmatrix} A_1 & 0 \\ 0 & A_2 \end{pmatrix}$, 则 $|\lambda I - A| = |\lambda I_1 - A_1| |\lambda I_2 - A_2|$

$$\Rightarrow \sigma(A) = \sigma(A_1) \cup \sigma(A_2)$$

即 $\{\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n\} = \{\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_k\} \cup \{\lambda_{k+1}, \lambda_{k+2}, \dots, \lambda_n\}$

$$\text{设 } B = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & * \\ & \lambda_2 & \\ & & \ddots \\ 0 & & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix}, f(x) \text{ 为多项式, 则 } f(B) = \begin{pmatrix} f(\lambda_1) & & (*) \\ & \ddots & \\ 0 & & f(\lambda_n) \end{pmatrix}$$

引理: 若 n 阶方阵 A 的谱集 $\sigma(A) = \{\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n\}$,

则 $f(A)$ 的全体特征值为 $\{f(\lambda_1), f(\lambda_2), \dots, f(\lambda_n)\}$, $f(x)$ 为多项式

$$\text{Pf: 由许尔定理, } A \sim B = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & * \\ & \ddots & \\ 0 & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow f(A) \sim f(B) = \begin{pmatrix} f(\lambda_1) & & * \\ & \ddots & \\ 0 & & f(\lambda_n) \end{pmatrix}$$

$\Rightarrow f(x)$ 的全体特征值为 $\{f(\lambda_1), f(\lambda_2), \dots, f(\lambda_n)\}$, $f(x)$ 为多项式

例如: λ 为 A 的特征值 $\Rightarrow \lambda^k$ 为 A^k 的特征值。($f(x) = x^k$)

引理： 令 $B = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & * \\ & \ddots & \\ O & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix}$, $f(x) = |xI - B| = (x - \lambda_1)(x - \lambda_2) \dots (x - \lambda_n)$

$$\text{则 } f(B) = (B - \lambda_1 I)(B - \lambda_2 I) \dots (B - \lambda_n I) = 0$$

Pf: 当 $n = 2$ 时, $B = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & * \\ 0 & \lambda_2 \end{pmatrix}$, $f(x) = (x - \lambda_1)(x - \lambda_2)$

$$\Rightarrow f(B) = (B - \lambda_1 I)(B - \lambda_2 I) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & * \\ 0 & (\lambda_2 - \lambda_1) \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} (\lambda_1 - \lambda_2) & * \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

\therefore 得证

★Cayley 公式： 设 n 阶方阵 A 的特征多项式为 $f(x) = |xI - A| = a_0 + a_1x + \dots + x^n$

$$\text{则 } f(A) = a_0I + a_1A + \dots + A^n = 0$$

Pf: 由许尔 $P^{-1}AP = B = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & (*) \\ & \lambda_2 & \\ & & \ddots \\ O & & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix}$

$$\Rightarrow P^{-1}f(A)P = f(P^{-1}AP) = f(B) = 0 \quad (\text{引理})$$

定义： 若多项式 $f(x)$ 使 $f(A) = 0$, 则称 $f(x)$ 为 A 的一个零化式

结论： 方阵 A 的特征多项式 $f(x) = |xI - A|$ 为 A 的一个零化式

Eg: $A = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$, 特征多项式 $f(x) = x^2 + 1$

$$\text{可知: } f(A) = A^2 + I = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} + I = 0$$

$$\text{且 } f(x) = |xI - A| = (x - i)(x + i), \quad (i = \sqrt{-1}, i^2 = -1)$$

$$f(A) = (A - iI)(A + iI) = 0$$

$$\text{也可取 } P = \begin{pmatrix} i & -1 \\ 1 & i \end{pmatrix}, \text{ 则 } P^{-1} = \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} -i & -1 \\ 1 & -i \end{pmatrix}$$

$$P^{-1}AP = \begin{pmatrix} i & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}, \text{ 对角形}$$

Eg: 知 $A = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & & (*) \\ & \ddots & \\ O & & 0 \end{pmatrix}_{n \times n}$, 则 $A^n = 0$

由 Cayley 特征多项式: $f(x) = x^n \Rightarrow f(A) = A^n = 0$

Ex.1. $A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$, 求 P 使得 $P^{-1}AP$ 为对角阵, 并验证 Cayley 定理。

2. $A = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}$, 求 $f(x) = |xI - A|$ 验证 $f(A) = 0$

补充知识 (schur 公式、Cayley 公式) 应用

$$\text{由 } A^n = -(a_0I + a_1A + \dots + a_{n-1}A^{n-1}) \quad \textcircled{1}$$

$$\Rightarrow A^{n+1} = A \bullet A^n = -(a_0A + a_1A^2 + \dots + a_{n-1}A^n) \quad \textcircled{2}$$

$$\text{把} \textcircled{1} \text{代入} \textcircled{2} \Rightarrow A^{n+1} = (*)I + (*)A + \dots + (*)A^{n-1}$$

可知: 任何 A^m ($m \geq n$) 都可写成 I, A, \dots, A^{n-1} 的线性组合。

任何多项式 $g(A)$, 可写成 I, A, \dots, A^{n-1} 的组合。

Eg: 若 $|A| \neq 0$, $f(x) = |xI - A| = a_0 + a_1x + \dots + x^n$, $a_0 = |-A| \neq 0$

则 A^{-1} 可用 A 的多项式表示

$$\because a_1A + a_2A^2 + \dots + a_{n-1}A^{n-1} + A^n = -a_0I$$

$$A(a_1I + a_2A + \dots + a_{n-1}A^{n-2} + A^{n-1}) = -a_0I$$

$$\Rightarrow A^{-1} = -\frac{1}{a_0}(a_1I + \dots + a_{n-1}A^{n-2} + A^{n-1})$$

零化式定义: 若 $g(x) = b_0 + b_1x + \dots + b_mx^m$, 使得 $g(A) = b_0I + b_1A + \dots + b_mA^m = 0$, 称

$g(x)$ 为方阵 A 的零化式

注: 方阵 A 的零化式有无穷多个

$$\because \text{取特征多项式 } f(x) \text{ 则 } f(A) = 0$$

任取式 $h(x)$, $f(A)h(A) = 0 \Rightarrow f(x)h(x)$ 也是零化式

极小式定义: 在方阵 A 的零化式集合中, 去次数最小的且首项系数为 1 的零化式 $m_A(x)$,

称它为 A 的极小式

注：极小式唯一

性质：①极小式 $m(x)$ 必为特征多项式 $f(x) = |xI - A|$ 的因式。

②特征多项式 $f(x) = |xI - A|$ 的每个单因子 $(x - \lambda)$ 也是极小式的因子。

③若 $f(x) = |xI - A| = (x - \lambda_1)^{n_1} (x - \lambda_2)^{n_2} \cdots (x - \lambda_s)^{n_s}$,

则极小式 $m(x) = (x - \lambda_1)^{l_1} (x - \lambda_2)^{l_2} \cdots (x - \lambda_s)^{l_s}$,

且 $1 \leq l_1 \leq n_1, 1 \leq l_2 \leq n_2, \dots, 1 \leq l_s \leq n_s$, $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n$ 互不相同。

Eg. $A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$, $B = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$, 求极小式 $m_A(x)$, $m_B(x)$

解：(1) $|xI - A| = (x - 2)^2(x - 1)$

极小式为： $(x - 2)^2(x - 1)$ 或 $(x - 2)(x - 1)$

计算： $(A - 2I)(A - I) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \neq 0$

\therefore 极小式为 $m_A(x) = (x - 2)^2(x - 1)$

(2) $|xI - B| = (x - 2)^2(x - 1)$

计算： $(B - 2I)(B - I) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = 0$

\therefore 极小式为 $m_B(x) = (x - 2)(x - 1)$

Eg. 求下列极小式 $m(x)$

(1) $A = \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 6 & 0 \\ -3 & -5 & 0 \\ -3 & -6 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$, (2) $B = \begin{pmatrix} 4 & -6 & 0 \\ 2 & -3 & 0 \\ -2 & 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$,

(3) $C = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$, (4) $D = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$

解：(1) 特征多项式 $|xI - A| = (x - 1)^2(x + 2)$

极小式为： $(x - 1)^2(x + 2)$ 或 $(x - 1)(x + 2)$

验证: $(A - I)(A + 2I) = 0$

\therefore 极小式为 $m(x) = (x - 1)(x + 2)$

(3) 解法如下

引理: A_1, A_2 的极小式为 $m_1(x), m_2(x)$

则 $\begin{pmatrix} A_1 & 0 \\ 0 & A_2 \end{pmatrix}$ 的极小式 $m(x)$ 等于 $m_1(x), m_2(x)$ 的最小公倍式

(此引理可推广到 A_1, A_2, \dots, A_s)

$$C = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad A_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \text{ 极小式为 } (x-1)^2, \quad A_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \text{ 极小式为 } (x-1)$$

取最小公倍式 $(x-1)^2$ 为 C 的极小式。

$$(5) \quad F = \begin{pmatrix} A_1 & 0 \\ 0 & A_2 \end{pmatrix}_{6 \times 6}, \quad A_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}, \quad A_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 6 & 0 \\ -3 & -5 & 0 \\ -3 & -6 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

引理: 设 $D = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & & O \\ & 0 & \ddots & \\ & & \ddots & 1 \\ O & & & 0 \end{pmatrix}$, 则 D 的极小式 $m(x) = x^n$

验证: 先证 D 的性质 (右推公式)

设 $A = (a_{ij})_{n \times n} = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n)$

则有 $AD = (0, \alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_{n-1})$

$AD^2 = (0, 0, \alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_{n-2})$

$AD^k = (0, \dots, 0, \alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_{n-k})$

单位向量技巧: $\because AI = A(e_1, e_2, \dots, e_n) = (Ae_1, Ae_2, \dots, Ae_n) = A = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n)$

$\therefore Ae_1 = \alpha_1, Ae_2 = \alpha_2, \dots, Ae_n = \alpha_n$

$\Rightarrow AD = A(0, e_1, e_2, \dots, e_{n-1}) = (0, \alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_{n-1})$

同理 $AD^2 = (AD)D = (0, 0, \alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_{n-2})$

可知: $D^{n-1} = (D)D^{n-2} = (0, 0, \dots, e_1) \neq 0$

$D^n = (D)D^{n-1} = 0$, 而特征多项式 $f(x) = |xI - D| = x^n$, 极小式为某个 x^k

由计算知：极小式为 $m(x) = x^n$

引理 2: 设 $B = \begin{pmatrix} b & 1 & & O \\ & b & \ddots & \\ & & \ddots & 1 \\ O & & & b \end{pmatrix}$, 则极小式为 $m(x) = (x - b)^n$

$$\because B - bI = D = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & & O \\ & 0 & \ddots & \\ & & \ddots & 1 \\ O & & & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\therefore (B - bI)^{n-1} = D^{n-1} \neq 0, \text{ 且特征多项式 } f(x) = |xI - D| = (x - b)^n$$

极小式为某个 $(x - b)^k$

$$\therefore \text{极小式为 } m(x) = (x - b)^n$$

复习: (1) 可用“分块形”行变换求逆

例: $\begin{pmatrix} A & C \\ 0 & B \end{pmatrix}$ 的逆

(2) “分块形”倍加变换不改变行列式的值

(3) **换位公式:** 若 $A = A_{m \times n}$, $B = B_{n \times m}$

$$\text{则 } |xI_m - kAB| = x^{m-n} |xI_n - kBA|, (m \geq n)$$

特征值 (谱估计)

盖尔圆方法 (Ger)

定义: n 阶方阵 $A = (a_{ij})_{n \times n}$ 的第 p 个 Ger (盖尔) 半径为

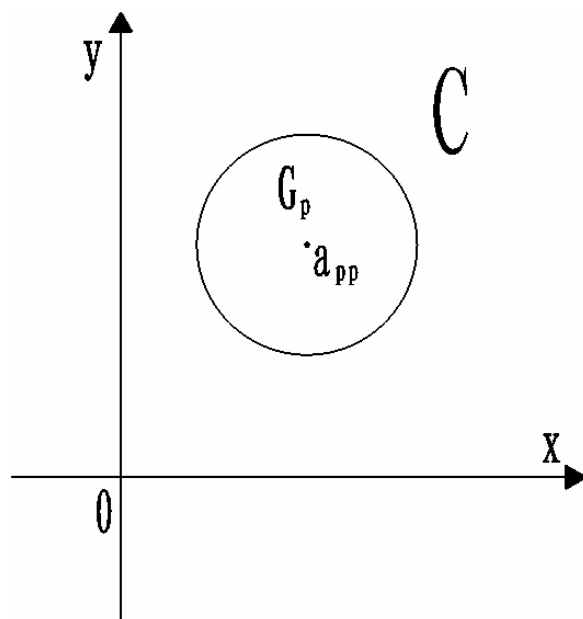
$$R_p = |a_{p1}| + |a_{p2}| + \cdots + \left| \overset{\wedge}{a_{pp}} \right| + \cdots + |a_{pn}|, \text{ (记号 “}\wedge\text{” 表示去掉该项)}$$

规定第 p 个 Ger 圆为

$$G_p = \{Z \mid |Z - a_{pp}| \leq R_p\}, Z \in C$$

第 1 圆盘定理: 方阵 $A = (a_{ij})_{n \times n}$ 的全体特征值 (谱) 都在 A 的 n 个 Ger 圆的并集中。

$$\text{即: } \sigma(A) = \{\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n\} \subset G_1 \cup G_2 \cup \cdots \cup G_n, \text{ (略证)}$$



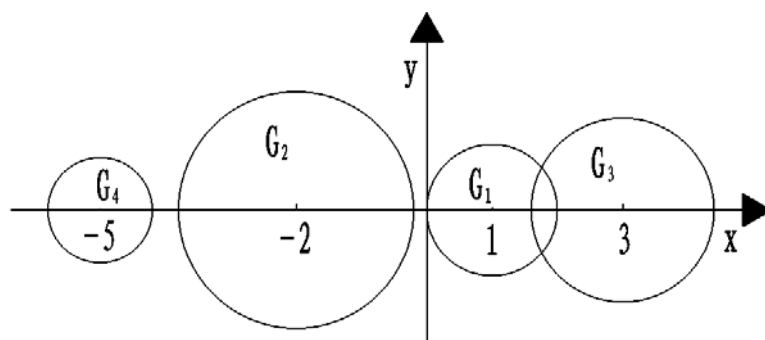
Eg. $A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0.2 & 0.5 & 0.3 \\ 0.6 & -2 & -1 & 0.2 \\ 0.3 & 0.4 & 3 & 0.7 \\ 0.2 & 0.3 & 0.3 & -5 \end{pmatrix}$, 估计 $\sigma(A)$ 的范围。

解：Ger 圆为： $G_1: |Z - a_{11}| = |Z - 1| \leq R_1 = 1$

$$G_2: |Z - a_{22}| = |Z + 2| \leq R_2 = 1.8$$

$$G_3: |Z - a_{33}| = |Z - 3| \leq R_3 = 1.4$$

$$G_4: |Z - a_{44}| = |Z + 5| \leq R_4 = 0.8$$



$$\sigma(A) \subset G_1 \cup G_2 \cup G_3 \cup G_4$$

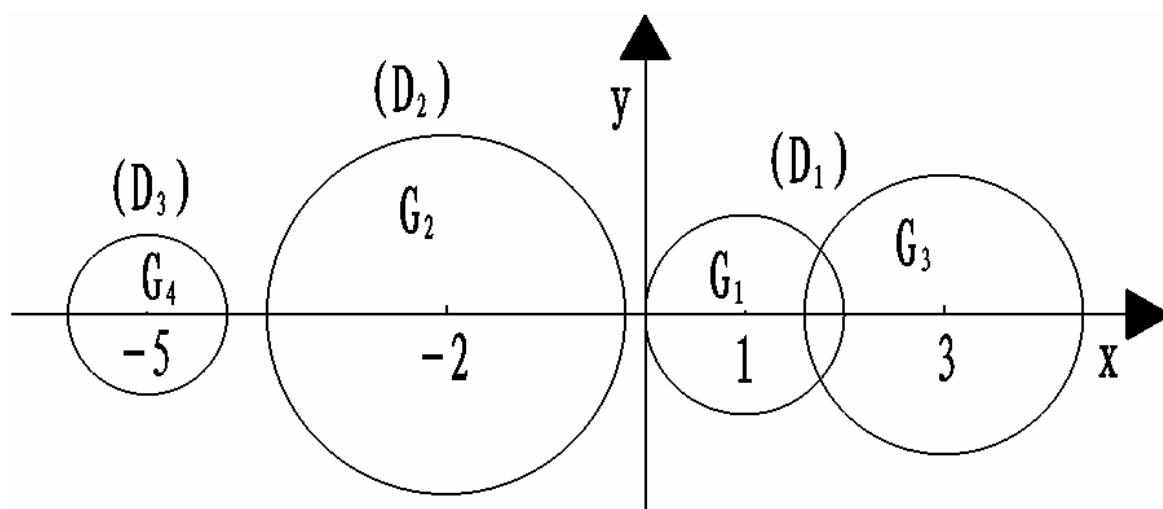
规定：若 A 的 s 个 Ger 圆相连（或相切）在一起，且与其它 $n - s$ 个圆分离，称此 s 个圆的并集为一个连通区域，简称区域。

特别：一个孤立圆也是连通区域。

第 2 圆盘定理：设 D 是 A 的 s 个 Ger 圆构成的区域（分支），则在 D 中恰有 s 个特征

值（含重复）

特别：一个孤立 Ger 圆中恰有一个特征值（略证）



注： A （指上边例子中）至少有两个实特征值（利用实系数方程的虚根成双出现）

Ex.1. $A = \begin{pmatrix} 9 & 1 & -2 & 1 \\ 0 & 8 & 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 & 4 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$, (1) 估计 $\sigma(A)$, (2) 说明 A 至少有 2 个实根

Ex.2. 估计下列谱 $\sigma(A)$

(1) $A = \begin{pmatrix} 20 & 5 & 0.3 \\ 4 & 10 & 0.5 \\ 2 & 4 & 10i \end{pmatrix}$, (2) $A = \begin{pmatrix} 20 & 5 & 0.6 \\ 4 & 10 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 & 10i \end{pmatrix}$, (3) $A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 1 & 3 \\ 2 & 3 & 5 \end{pmatrix}$

注：由于 A 与转置 A^T 有相同的特征值, $\sigma(A) = \sigma(A^T)$, 可用 A^T 的 Ger 半径代替 A 的半径。

Ex3. 证明 n 阶方阵 $A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 2/n & 1/n & \cdots & 1/n \\ 1/n & 4 & 1/n & \cdots & 1/n \\ 1/n & 1/n & 6 & \cdots & 1/n \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 1/n & 1/n & 1/n & \cdots & 2n \end{pmatrix}$ 恰有 n 个不同实特征值,

且 $|A| > 1 \times 3 \times 5 \times \cdots \times (2n-1)$

§1 Jordan (约当) 标准形 (简介)

规定: n_k 阶上三角阵 $J_k = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda & 1 & & 0 \\ & \lambda & \ddots & \\ & & \ddots & 1 \\ & & & \lambda \end{pmatrix}_{n_k \times n_k}$ 叫做一个 n_k 阶 Jordan 块, λ 是任意复数。

特别: $n_k = 1$ 时, 对应 1 阶 Jordan 块, $J_1 = (\lambda)$ 是一个数 λ

定义: 称上三角阵 $J: J = \begin{pmatrix} J_1 & & \\ & J_2 & \\ & & \ddots \\ & & & J_s \end{pmatrix}_{n \times n}$ 为 Jordan 标准形 (矩阵),

其中 J_1, J_2, \dots, J_s 都是 Jordan 块, $(n_1 + n_2 + \dots + n_s = n)$

例如: $J = \begin{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ & 2 \end{pmatrix} & & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ & 3 \end{pmatrix} & \\ & & (3) \end{pmatrix}, J = \begin{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ & 2 \end{pmatrix} & & \\ & (3) & \\ & & (3) \end{pmatrix}, J = (2 + i)$

分别为 2 块、3 块、1 块

特别: 对角阵 $A = \begin{pmatrix} (\lambda_1) & & \\ & (\lambda_2) & \\ & & \ddots \\ & & & (\lambda_n) \end{pmatrix}$ 含有 n 块

注: Jordan 形 J 中的块数是确定的, 块的排列次序是任意的。

注: 可证明 $\begin{pmatrix} J_1 & 0 \\ 0 & J_2 \end{pmatrix} \sim \begin{pmatrix} J_2 & 0 \\ 0 & J_1 \end{pmatrix}$, 相似

注: 全体对角元构成全体特征值 $\sigma(J)$, $\sigma(J) = \sigma(J_1) \cup \sigma(J_2) \cup \dots \cup \sigma(J_s)$

Jordan 标准形定理: 每个复 n 阶方阵 A 都相似于一个 Jordan 矩阵

即: $P^{-1}AP = J = \begin{pmatrix} J_1 & & \\ & J_2 & \\ & & \ddots \\ & & & J_s \end{pmatrix}, (n_1 + n_2 + \dots + n_s = n)$

且除了 Jordan 块次序外 J 由 A 唯一确定, 称 J 是 A 的 Jordan 形。

$\sigma(A) = \sigma(J) = \sigma(J_1) \cup \sigma(J_2) \cup \dots \cup \sigma(J_s)$

利用求秩方法确定 A 的 J

注： 若 $A \sim J$ ，则 $(A \pm bI)^k \sim (J \pm bI)^k$ ， $\text{rank}(A \pm bI)^k = \text{rank}(J \pm bI)^k$

Eg. $A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$ 求 Jordan 形 J

注： A 的单根对应 1 阶 Jordan

解：先求特征多项式： $|\lambda I - A| = (\lambda - 1)^2(\lambda - 2)$

可设 $A \sim J = \begin{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & * \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} & 0 \\ 0 & (2) \end{pmatrix}$ ， $*$ 是 1 或 0

取 $b = 1$ ， $(A - I) \sim (J - I) = \begin{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & * \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$

$r(J - I) = r(A - I) = 2 \Rightarrow * = 1$ ， $J = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$

Ex. 求下列 Jordan 形

(1) $A = \begin{pmatrix} -2 & -1 & -1 & -1 \\ 2 & 1 & 3 & 2 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ -1 & -1 & -2 & -2 \end{pmatrix}$

可知： $|\lambda I - A| = \lambda(\lambda - 1)^3$

(2) $A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$

Jordan 形 (续)

Jordan 标准形定理： 每个 n 阶复矩阵 A 都相似于一个 Jordan 形

即： $P^{-1}AP = J = \begin{pmatrix} J_1 & & \\ & J_2 & \\ & & \ddots \\ & & & J_s \end{pmatrix}$ ，其中 J_1, J_2, \dots, J_s 为 Jordan 块（可以重复）

且 A 的 Jordan 形 J 由 A 唯一确定（各块次序可任意）

用求秩 $\text{rank}(A \pm bI)^k$ 可确定 J （差分格式）

（1）求秩：直至有连续两个秩相等为止。

令 $r_0 = n, r_1 = (A - \lambda I), r_2 = (A - \lambda I)^2, \dots, r_k = (A - \lambda I)^k, \dots$

（2）令 $d_0 = r_0 - r_1, d_1 = r_1 - r_2, \dots, d_k = r_k - r_{k+1}, \dots$

（3）令 $l_1 = d_0 - d_1, l_2 = d_1 - d_2, \dots, l_k = d_{k-1} - d_k, \dots$

结论：（1） J 中含 λ 的块共有 $d_0 = n - r(A - \lambda I)$ 个

（2） J 中含 λ 的 k 阶块恰有 l_k 个 ($k = 1, 2, 3, \dots$)

Eg. $A = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -4 & 0 & 1 \\ 4 & -5 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 3 & -2 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$ ，求 Jordan 形 J ，($A \sim J$)

解：特征多项式： $|xI - A| = \begin{vmatrix} x-3 & 4 \\ -4 & x+5 \end{vmatrix} \bullet \begin{vmatrix} x-3 & 2 \\ -2 & x+1 \end{vmatrix} = (x-1)^2(x+1)^2$

特征值 $\sigma(A) = \{1, 1, -1, -1\}$

求秩数： $\lambda = 1$ 时， $r(A - I) = 3, r(A - I)^2 = 2, r(A - I)^3 = 2$

令 $r_0 = n = 4, r_1 = 3, r_2 = 2, r_3 = 2$

列表： $\begin{matrix} 4 \\ 3 \\ 2 \\ 2 \end{matrix} \begin{matrix} > 1 \\ > 1 \\ > 0 \end{matrix} \begin{matrix} > 0 \\ > 1 \\ > 1 \end{matrix}$ ，可知 J 中含有 $\lambda = 1$ 的块共有 1 个，

且含 $\lambda = 1$ 的 2 阶块有 1 个 $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$

同理： $\lambda = -1$ 时， $r(A + I) = 3, r(A + I)^2 = 2, r(A + I)^3 = 2$

列表： $\begin{matrix} 4 \\ 3 \\ 2 \\ 2 \end{matrix} \begin{matrix} > 1 \\ > 1 \\ > 0 \end{matrix} \begin{matrix} > 0 \\ > 1 \\ > 1 \end{matrix}$ ，恰有 1 个 2 阶块 $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$

$$\text{最后 } J = \begin{pmatrix} J_1 & \\ & J_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} & \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} & \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{pmatrix}, A \sim J$$

$$\text{Eg. } A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 4 & 2 & 0 & 0 \\ 5 & 3 & 3 & 0 \\ 6 & 3 & 3 & 4 \end{pmatrix}, \text{ 有 } n=4 \text{ 个互异特征值 } 1, 2, 3, 4$$

$$\text{必有 } A \sim J = \begin{pmatrix} (1) & & & \\ & (2) & & \\ & & (3) & \\ & & & (4) \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{Eg. } A = \begin{pmatrix} b & & & & O \\ a_1 & b & & & \\ & a_2 & b & & \\ & & \ddots & \ddots & \\ * & & & a_{n-1} & b \end{pmatrix}_{n \times n}, (a_i \neq 0)$$

$$A \text{ 的 } \sigma(A) = \{b, b, \dots, b\}, \text{ 可设 } A \sim J = \begin{pmatrix} b & * & & \\ & b & \ddots & \\ & & \ddots & * \\ O & & & b \end{pmatrix}, * \text{ 为 } 1 \text{ 或 } 0$$

$$\because A - bI \sim J - bI \Rightarrow r(J - bI) = r(A - bI)$$

$$A - bI = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & & & & O \\ a_1 & 0 & & & \\ & a_2 & 0 & & \\ & & \ddots & \ddots & \\ * & & & a_{n-1} & 0 \end{pmatrix}, r(A - bI) = n - 1$$

$$J - bI = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & * & & \\ & 0 & * & \\ & & 0 & \ddots \\ O & & & \ddots & * \\ & & & & 0 \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow \text{全体 } * \text{ 都为 } 1$$

$$\therefore J = \begin{pmatrix} b & 1 & & \\ & b & \ddots & \\ & & \ddots & 1 \\ O & & & b \end{pmatrix}$$

Eg. $A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 & -1 \\ 2 & -1 & -2 \\ -1 & 1 & -2 \end{pmatrix}$, $|xI - A| = (x-1)^3$, $\sigma(A) = \{1, 1, 1\}$

可知 $A \sim J = \begin{pmatrix} (1) & & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} & \end{pmatrix}$

求 P , 已知 $P^{-1}AP = J$

解: 令 $P = \{X_1, X_2, X_3\}$, 由 $AP = PJ$

$$(AX_1, AX_2, AX_3) = (X_1, X_2, X_2 + X_3) \Rightarrow \begin{cases} AX_1 = X_1 \\ AX_2 = X_2 \\ AX_3 = X_2 + X_3 \end{cases} \Rightarrow \begin{cases} (A-I)X_1 = 0 \\ (A-I)X_2 = 0 \\ (A-I)X_3 = X_2 \end{cases}$$

由 $(A-I)X_1 = 0$ 可得基础解: $\alpha = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$, $\beta = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$

通解: $X = k_1\alpha + k_2\beta = \begin{pmatrix} k_1 + k_2 \\ k_1 \\ k_2 \end{pmatrix} = X_2$

求解: $(A-I)X_3 = X_2$

增广阵: $(A-I|X_2) = \left(\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & -1 & -1 & k_1 + k_2 \\ 2 & -2 & -2 & k_1 \\ -1 & 1 & 1 & k_2 \end{array} \right)$

$$\Rightarrow \left(\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & -1 & -1 & k_1 + k_2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & k_1 + 2k_2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & k_1 + 2k_2 \end{array} \right) \Rightarrow k_1 + 2k_2 = 0, \text{ 可取 } k_1 = 2, k_2 = -1$$

$$\Rightarrow \left(\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & -1 & -1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right) \Rightarrow x_1 - x_2 - x_3 = 1$$

取 $X_3 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$, 令 $X_1 = \alpha = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$, $X_2 = k_1\alpha + k_2\beta = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$

$$P = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow P^{-1}AP = J$$

注： A 中元素很小的变化可能引起 Jordan 形很大变化 (Butterfly Effect?)

(这就是为什么不能用计算机求 J)

例： $A(\varepsilon) = \begin{pmatrix} \varepsilon & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$, ($\varepsilon \neq 0$), 可知 $A(\varepsilon) \sim J(\varepsilon) = \begin{pmatrix} \varepsilon & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$

令 $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0$, 求极限 $A(\varepsilon) \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = A_0$, $J(\varepsilon) \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = 0$

例 1：求矩阵 $A = \begin{pmatrix} -2 & -1 & -1 & -1 \\ 2 & 1 & 3 & 2 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ -1 & -1 & -2 & -2 \end{pmatrix}$ 的 Jordan 标准形 J

解：求出 A 的特征多项式 $|\lambda I - A| = \lambda(\lambda + 1)^3$, 全体特征值为 0, -1, -1, -1

若 A 与相似于 Jordan 标准形 J : $A \sim J$, 则它们有相同的特征值, 从而有

$$J = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & & & \\ & -1 & * & \\ & & -1 & * \\ & & & -1 \end{pmatrix}, \text{ 其中的 } * \text{ 等于 } 1 \text{ 或 } 0$$

注： 若 A 的特征值 λ 是单根, 则必有 1 阶 Jordan 块(λ)。

由相似关系 $A + I \sim J + I = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & & & \\ & 0 & * & \\ & & 0 & * \\ & & & 0 \end{pmatrix}$

可得秩数: $r(J + I) = r(A + I) = \text{rank} \begin{pmatrix} -1 & -1 & -1 & -1 \\ 2 & 2 & 3 & 2 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ -1 & -1 & -2 & -1 \end{pmatrix} = 2$

可知 $J + I$ 中的 2 个 * 只有一个等于 1, 另一个为 0, 因此

$$J = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & & & \\ & -1 & 1 & \\ & & -1 & 0 \\ & & & -1 \end{pmatrix} \text{ 或 } J = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & & & \\ & -1 & 0 & \\ & & -1 & 1 \\ & & & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

这两个 J 本质上是相同的 (都含有 3 个 Jordan 块), 只是 Jordan 块的排列次序不同。

注： 如果两个 Jordan 矩阵只是 Jordan 块的次序不同, 则认为它们本质上相同。在这个意

义上

本题中的 J 由 A 唯一决定. 可写 $A \sim J = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & & & \\ & -1 & 1 & \\ & & -1 & \\ & & & -1 \end{pmatrix}$

另外, 可找到一个可逆阵 $P = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 3 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ -2 & 1 & 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$ 使得

$$AP = P \begin{pmatrix} 0 & & & \\ & -1 & 1 & \\ & & -1 & \\ & & & -1 \end{pmatrix} = PJ, \text{ 即 } P^{-1}AP = J$$

例 2 设 $A = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 1 & 0 \\ -4 & 3 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$

(1) 求 Jordan 标准形 J , 并判断 A 可否对角化;

(2) 求相似变换阵 P , 使 $P^{-1}AP = J$

解: A 的特征多项式为: $|\lambda I - A| = (\lambda - 2)(\lambda - 1)^2$, 特征值为 2, 1, 1。所以

$$A \sim J = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & & \\ & 1 & 1 \\ & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

注: 若 A 的特征值 λ 是单根, 则必有 1 阶 Jordan 块(λ)。

由于 J 含有 2 阶 Jordan 块, 可知 A 不能对角化.

令 $P = (X_1, X_2, X_3)$, $X_i (i = 1, 2, 3)$ 为列向量, 则 $AP = PJ$, 即

$$A(X_1, X_2, X_3) = (X_1, X_2, X_3) \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix},$$

即 $AX_1 = 2X_1, AX_2 = X_2, AX_3 = X_2 + X_3$ 。

所以 X_1 为 A 的关于 $\lambda = 2$ 的特征向量; X_2 为 A 的关于 $\lambda = 1$ 的特征向量;

X_3 是非齐次方程 $(A - I)X_3 = X_2$ 的解 (广义特征向量)。

由 $(2I - A)X_1 = 0$ 解出 $X_1 = (0, 0, 1)^T$,

由 $(I - A)X_2 = 0$ 解出 $X_2 = (1, 2, -1)^T$,

由 $(A - I)X_3 = X_2$ 解出 $X_3 = (-1, -1, 0)^T$, 或 $X_3 = (0, 1, -1)^T$

令 $P = (X_1, X_2, X_3) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$, 或 $P = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$ 可知

$$AP = P \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = PJ, \text{ 即 } P^{-1}AP = J.$$

例 3 试证: 每个 Jordan 块 J_k 都相似于它的转置 J_k^T .

Pf: 计算可知

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & & & 1 \\ & \ddots & & \\ & & 1 & \\ 1 & & & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \lambda & 1 & & 0 \\ & \ddots & \ddots & \\ & & \ddots & 1 \\ 0 & & & \lambda \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & & & 1 \\ & \ddots & & \\ & & 1 & \\ 1 & & & 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \lambda & & & 0 \\ 1 & \ddots & & \\ & \ddots & \ddots & \\ 0 & & 1 & \lambda \end{bmatrix}.$$

注: 由此例可知, 每个 Jordan 矩阵 J 都相似于它的转置: $J \sim J^T$ (下三角矩阵)

利用此例 3 与 Jordan 标准形定理可得:

推论 3: 每个方阵 A 都相似于它的转置 A^T : $A \sim A^T$

例 4 设 k 为自然数, $A^k = 0$, 试证: $|A + I| = 1$

证: 由 $A^k = 0$ 知 A 的特征值全为零, 从而 Jordan 标准形 J 的主对角线元素全为零。

利用 $A = PJP^{-1}$, 可知 $|A + I| = |PJP^{-1} + I| = |P||J + I||P^{-1}| = 1$

补充结论:

每个 Jordan 块 $J_k(b) = \begin{pmatrix} b & 1 & & \\ & b & \ddots & \\ & & \ddots & 1 \\ O & & & b \end{pmatrix}_{k \times k}$ 的极小式为 $m(x) = (x - b)^k$

每个块 $J_k(b)$ 相似于转置 $J_k(b)^T = \begin{pmatrix} b & & & O \\ 1 & b & & \\ & \ddots & \ddots & \\ & & 1 & b \end{pmatrix}$

Pf: 取 $P = \begin{pmatrix} O & & 1 \\ & \ddots & \\ 1 & & O \end{pmatrix}_{k \times k}$ 可知 $P^{-1} = P$ (正交阵)

计算知: $\begin{pmatrix} b & 1 & & \\ & b & \ddots & \\ & & \ddots & 1 \\ & & & b \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} O & & 1 \\ & \ddots & \\ 1 & & O \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} O & & 1 \\ & \ddots & \\ 1 & & O \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} b & & & \\ & 1 & b & \\ & & \ddots & \\ & & & 1 & b \end{pmatrix}$

$$J_k P = P J_k^T \Rightarrow P^{-1} J_k P = J_k^T, J_k \sim J_k^T$$

练习: $J = \begin{pmatrix} J_1 & & \\ & J_2 & \\ & & \ddots \\ & & & J_s \end{pmatrix} \sim \begin{pmatrix} J_1^T & & \\ & J_2^T & \\ & & \ddots \\ & & & J_s^T \end{pmatrix} = J^T$

每个 A 相似于 A^T

$$\because A \sim J \Leftrightarrow A^T \sim J^T \sim J \Rightarrow A \sim A^T$$

Ex.1. 已知 5 阶阵 A 有条件 $r(A) = 3, r(A^2) = 2, r(A + I) = 4, r(A + I)^2 = 3$, 求 Jordan 形。

2. 求下列 Jordan 形

$$(1) A = \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 4 & 0 & 0 \\ 3 & 0 & 4 & 0 \\ 2 & 3 & 0 & 4 \end{pmatrix}, (2) A = \begin{pmatrix} 4 & -3 & 0 & 0 \\ -3 & -2 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & -3 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & 8 & 5 \end{pmatrix}$$

Jordan 形公式与结论

参考书: (1) Horn and Johnson: "Matrix Analysis" (矩阵分析)

§3 Jordan 形的一个证明 (用分块矩阵方法)

(2) 李尚志《线性代数》P370 定理 1 (差分格式求 Jordan 形)

利用 $(xI - A)$ 的初等因子求 Jordan 形

定义: 若 $g(x) = (x - b_1)^{k_1} (x - b_2)^{k_2} \cdots (x - b_s)^{k_s}$, b_1, b_2, \dots, b_s 互不相同

称 $(x - b_1)^{k_1}, (x - b_2)^{k_2}, \dots, (x - b_s)^{k_s}$ 为 $g(x)$ 的初等因子。

定义: (1) 若 Jordan 块 $J_k = \begin{pmatrix} b & 1 & & \\ & b & \ddots & \\ & & \ddots & 1 \\ & & & b \end{pmatrix}_{n_k \times n_k}$, 称 $(x-b)^{n_k}$ 为 J_k 的初等因子

(2) 若 $A \sim J = \begin{pmatrix} J_1 & & \\ & J_2 & \\ & & \ddots \\ & & & J_s \end{pmatrix}$ (Jordan 形), 称 J_1, J_2, \dots, J_s 的初等因子

$(x-b_1)^{n_1}, (x-b_2)^{n_2}, \dots, (x-b_s)^{n_s}$ 为 A 的全体初等因子。

注: A 的初等因子 $(x-b)^k$ 与 Jordan 块一一对应

例如: 因子 $(x-b)^k \leftrightarrow \begin{pmatrix} b & 1 & & \\ & b & \ddots & \\ & & \ddots & 1 \\ & & & b \end{pmatrix}_{k \times k}$

特别 单因子 $(x-b) \leftrightarrow (b)$, (1 阶块)

初等因子定理: 若 $(xI-A)$ 可用初等变换化为对角形

$$(xI-A) \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} g_1(x) & & \\ & g_2(x) & \\ & & \ddots \\ & & & g_n(x) \end{pmatrix}_{n \times n}$$

则 (1) $g_1(x), g_2(x), \dots, g_n(x)$ 的全体初等因子 (含重复) 恰为 A 的初等因子。

(2) 行列式 $|xI-A| = g_1(x)g_2(x)\dots g_n(x) =$ 全体初等因子的积。

$(xI-A)$ 有 3 类初等变换

(1) 互换行 (或列) (2) 用常数 $k \neq 0$ 乘某一行 (或列)

(3) 倍加法: 用多项式 $k(x)$ 乘第 j 行后加到第 i 行。(记 $r_i + k(x)r_j$) (**注:** 第 j 行不变)

Eg. $A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$, 求 Jordan 形 J

$$\begin{aligned}
 (xI - A) &= \begin{pmatrix} x-2 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & x-1 & -1 \\ -1 & 1 & x-3 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{\text{互换 } r_1, r_2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -(x-1) & 1 \\ x-2 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & x-3 \end{pmatrix} \\
 \text{解: 令 } &\xrightarrow[r_3+r_1]{r_2-(x-2)r_1} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -(x-1) & 1 \\ 0 & (x-1)(x-2) & -(x-2) \\ 0 & -(x-2) & (x-2) \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{\text{列变换}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & (x-1)(x-2) & -(x-2) \\ 0 & -(x-2) & (x-2) \end{pmatrix} \\
 &\xrightarrow{c_2+c_3} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & (x-1)(x-2) & -(x-2) \\ 0 & 0 & (x-2) \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{r_2+r_3} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & (x-2)^2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & (x-2) \end{pmatrix}
 \end{aligned}$$

全体初等因子为 $(x-2)^2, (x-2)$

$$\Rightarrow A \sim J = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 2 \\ & & 2 \end{pmatrix}, \text{ (Jordan 形)}$$

Eg. 把 $A = \begin{pmatrix} b & 1 & & \\ & b & \ddots & \\ & & \ddots & 1 \\ & & & b \end{pmatrix}_{n \times n}$ 的 $(xI - A)$ 化成对角形。

$$\begin{aligned}
 (xI - b) &= \begin{pmatrix} -b & -1 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & x-b & \ddots & \vdots \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & x-b \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{\text{行变换}} \begin{pmatrix} x-b & -1 & \cdots & 0 \\ (x-b)^2 & 0 & \ddots & \vdots \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & -1 \\ (x-b)^n & 0 & \cdots & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\
 \text{解: } &\xrightarrow{\text{列变换}} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \ddots & \vdots \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & -1 \\ (x-b)^n & 0 & \cdots & 0 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{\text{互换行}} \begin{pmatrix} -1 & & & \\ & -1 & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ & & & (x-b)^n \end{pmatrix}
 \end{aligned}$$

Jordan 形与极小式

引理: (1) Jordan 块 $J_k(b) = \begin{pmatrix} b & 1 & & \\ & b & \ddots & \\ & & \ddots & 1 \\ & & & b \end{pmatrix}_{k \times k}$ 的极小式为 $m(x) = (x-b)^k$

(2) 设 $A \sim J = \begin{pmatrix} J_1 & & \\ & J_2 & \\ & & \ddots \\ & & & J_s \end{pmatrix}$ (Jordan 形), 则 A 的极小式 $m(x) =$ 全体初等

因子的最小公倍

推论： A 的极小式 $m(x)$ 分解后的初等因子是 A 的部分初等因子，可用极小式求出 3 阶

阵 $A = A_{3 \times 3}$ 的 Jordan 形

Eg. $A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & -2 \end{pmatrix}$, $|xI - A| = (x-1)^2(x+2)$

计算: $(A-I)(A+2I) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & -3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 3 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \neq 0$

只有 $(A-I)^2(A+2I) = 0$, (Cayley 公式)

$\Rightarrow A$ 的极小式 $m(x) = (x-1)^2(x+2)$

$\Rightarrow A$ 的初等因子 $(x-1)^2, (x+2)$

$\Rightarrow A \sim J = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & \\ 0 & 1 & \\ & & 2 \end{pmatrix}$, (Jordan 形)

Eg. $A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$, $|xI - A| = (x-2)^3$

计算: $(A-2I)(A-2I) = 0 \Rightarrow m(x) = (x-2)^2$ 有一个 Jordan 块 $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$

$\Rightarrow A \sim J = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & & \\ & 2 & 1 \\ & 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$

引理： 设 $A = \begin{pmatrix} A_1 & & \\ & A_2 & \\ & & \ddots \\ & & & A_s \end{pmatrix}$, 则 A 的极小式=各块极小式的最小公倍

且各块 A_1, A_2, \dots, A_n 的 Jordan 块也是 A 的 Jordan 块

Ex. 求 $A = \begin{pmatrix} A_1 & \\ & A_2 \end{pmatrix}_{6 \times 6}$ 的 Jordan 形 $A_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$, $A_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$

对角化的条件 (判定)

定义：若有 P 使得 $P^{-1}AP = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & \\ & \lambda_2 & \\ & & \ddots \\ & & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix}$ 称 A 为可对角化的（也称 A 是单纯的）

引理：阶数大于 1 的 Jordan 块 J_k 不可对角化（Jordan 块可对角化 \Leftrightarrow 阶数为 1）

Pf: 设 $J_k = \begin{pmatrix} b & 1 & & \\ & b & \ddots & \\ & & \ddots & 1 \\ & & & b \end{pmatrix}_{k \times k}$, ($k > 1$), 特征根为 b, b, \dots, b

若 J_k 可对角化: $P^{-1}J_kP = \begin{pmatrix} b & & \\ & b & \\ & & \ddots \\ & & & b \end{pmatrix} = bI \Rightarrow J_k = P(bI)P^{-1} = bI$, 矛盾。

定理：(1) 若方阵 A 的 Jordan 形中有阶数大于 1 的块, 则 A 不能对角化。

(2) A 可对角化 \Leftrightarrow Jordan 块都是 1 阶的, 此时 $A \sim J = \begin{pmatrix} (\lambda_1) & & \\ & (\lambda_2) & \\ & & \ddots \\ & & & (\lambda_n) \end{pmatrix}$

(3) A 可对角化 $\Leftrightarrow A$ 的极小式无重根。

(因为: 极小式中的初等因子是全体初等因子的公倍)

(4) 若 $f(x)$ 是 A 的一个零化式且 $f(x)$ 无重根, 则 A 可对角化

(因为零化式为极小式的倍式)

Eg. $A = \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 6 & 0 \\ -3 & -5 & 0 \\ -3 & -6 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ 判定 A 可否对角化

解: $\because |xI - A| = (x-1)^2(x+2)$

计算: $(A-I)(A+2I) = 0 \Rightarrow$ 极小式 $m(x) = (x-1)(x+2) \Rightarrow A$ 可对角化:

$$A \sim \begin{pmatrix} 1 & & \\ & -2 & \\ & & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Ex.1. 若 $A^2 - 3A + 2I_n = 0$, 则 A 可对角化

2. 若 $A^2 = 2A$, 则 A 可对角化

3. 《矩阵分析（史荣昌等）》P111 7 (1) (3) 8 (1) (3) P110 3 4

§2 线性变换与矩阵

线性空间（向量空间）定义：

集合 V 中有加法 “+” 与数乘 “ $k(\bullet)$ ” $k \in R(C)$ ，具有 8 条规则（公理）：其中 V 中元素叫“向量”（广元）。

子空间条件：

设 $W \subset V$ （空间），若 W 对加法与倍数（数乘）封闭，则 W 是 V 的子空间，生成（张成）自空间，任取 $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_s \in V$ ，称 $W = \text{span}(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_s) = \{\text{全体组合 } \alpha = k_1\alpha_1 + k_2\alpha_2 + \dots + k_s\alpha_s\}, (k_1, k_2, \dots, k_s \in R)$ ，为 $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_s$ 的生成空间。

可验证： W 对加法与倍数都封闭。

Eg. (1) $m \times n$ 矩阵空间： $R^{m \times n}, C^{m \times n}$

方阵： $R^{n \times n}, C^{n \times n}$

$$(2) \text{ 数组空间: } R^n = \left\{ x = \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{pmatrix}, x_i \in R \right\}, \quad C^n = \left\{ z = \begin{pmatrix} z_1 \\ z_2 \\ \vdots \\ z_n \end{pmatrix}, z_i \in C \right\}$$

子空间例子：

(1) 核空间（零空间，解空间）：

设 $A = A_{m \times n} \in R^{m \times n}$ ，规定： $N(A) = A^{-1}(0) \triangleq \{x \in R^n | Ax = 0\}$ （对加法、倍数封闭）

(2) 值空间（列空间）： $R(A) = \{ \text{全体 } y = Ax | x \in R^n \}$

注：把 $A = A_{m \times n}$ 按列 $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ 改写 $A = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n)$ ，令 $x = \begin{pmatrix} k_1 \\ k_2 \\ \vdots \\ k_n \end{pmatrix} \in R^n$ ，

$$\text{写 } Ax = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n) \begin{pmatrix} k_1 \\ k_2 \\ \vdots \\ k_n \end{pmatrix} = \sum_{i=1}^n k_i \alpha_i \Rightarrow \text{值空间 } R(A) = \{Ax | x \in R^n\} = \left\{ y = \sum_{i=1}^n k_i \alpha_i | k_i \in R \right\}$$

（全体线性组合），即 $R(A) = \text{span}(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n)$ ，（由 A 的列生成）也叫 A 的列向量。

注： $R^n = \text{span}(e_1, e_2, \dots, e_n) = \left\{ x = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i e_i \mid x_i \in R \right\}$

“相关组”与“无关组”定义。

“表示”与“组合”： 若 $\alpha = \sum_{i=1}^s k_i \alpha_i$ ，称 α 可由 $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_s$ “表示”

也说 α 是 $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_s$ 的“组合”

极大无关组： 若大组 S 中有 r 个无关向量 $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_r$ ，且任何 $r+1$ 个向量都相关

则称 $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_r$ 是一个极大无关组， r 叫 S 的秩数 $\text{rank}(S) = r$

注： 大组中任 2 个极大无关组互相表示（等价）

唯一表示定理： 若 $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_s$ 无关，且 $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_s, \beta$ 相关，则有唯一表示： $\beta = \sum_{i=1}^s k_i \alpha_i$

（系数唯一），此时，规定 k_1, k_2, \dots, k_s 为 β 的坐标。

注： 坐标常写成列 $\begin{pmatrix} k_1 \\ k_2 \\ \vdots \\ k_s \end{pmatrix} = (k_1, k_2, \dots, k_s)^T$

基、维数、坐标定义： 设空间 V 中有 n 个无关向量 $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ ，且任何 $n+1$ 个元都相关，则称 $(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n)$ （有次序）为 V 中一个基，且 n 叫维数，记 $\dim V = n$

注： 空间的基 $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ 就是 V 中的一个极大无关组（有次序），且维数就是秩数：

$$\dim V = \text{rank}(V) = n$$

坐标定义： 设空间 V 中有 n 个无关向量 $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ ，且任何 $n+1$ 个向量必相关，则

任一 $\alpha \in V$ 必有唯一表示 $\alpha = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \alpha_i$ ，称列向量 $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)^T = \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{pmatrix}$ 为 α

的坐标（此时 V 的基为 $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ ）

注： 向量 α 与坐标是一一对应（唯一表示定理）

基元 $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ 与单位向量 e_1, e_2, \dots, e_n 对应，设 $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ 为 V 中基，

$$\text{则} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \alpha_1 = 1 \bullet \alpha_1 + 0 \bullet \alpha_2 + \cdots + 0 \bullet \alpha_n \xrightarrow{\text{对应}} e_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \in R^n \\ \alpha_2 = 0 \bullet \alpha_1 + 1 \bullet \alpha_2 + \cdots + 0 \bullet \alpha_n \xrightarrow{\text{对应}} e_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \in R^n \\ \vdots \\ \alpha_n = 0 \bullet \alpha_1 + 0 \bullet \alpha_2 + \cdots + 1 \bullet \alpha_n \xrightarrow{\text{对应}} e_n = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ \vdots \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \in R^n \end{array} \right.$$

空间同构: 若 V 与 W 是空间, $\varphi: V \rightarrow W$ 是映射

- (1) φ 是一一对应,
- (2) $\varphi(\alpha + \beta) = \varphi(\alpha) + \varphi(\beta)$, $\varphi(k\alpha) = k\varphi(\alpha)$, (保加法、保倍数)

称 φ 是 V 到 W 的同构, 记 $V \stackrel{\varphi}{=} W$

性质: (1) 同构 φ 把无关组变成无关组 (把基变成基) \Rightarrow (保坐标)

(2) φ 把相关组变成相关组

Pf: (1) 设 $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ 为无关组, 若 $\sum_{i=1}^n k_i \alpha_i = 0$, 则必有 $k_1 = 0, k_2 = 0, \dots, k_n = 0$

$$\text{设 } \sum_{i=1}^n k_i \varphi(\alpha_i) = 0, (\varphi \text{ 是同构}) \Leftrightarrow \sum_{i=1}^n \varphi(k_i \alpha_i) = 0 \Leftrightarrow \varphi\left(\sum_{i=1}^n k_i \alpha_i\right) = 0 = \varphi(0)$$

$$\Leftrightarrow \sum_{i=1}^n k_i \alpha_i = 0 \text{ (一一对应)} \Rightarrow k_1 = k_2 = \cdots = k_n = 0 \Rightarrow \varphi(\alpha_1), \varphi(\alpha_2), \dots, \varphi(\alpha_n) \text{ 无关}$$

同构定理: (1) 任何 n 维 (实) 空间 V 都与 R^n 同构

(2) 任 2 个 n 维空间 V 与 W 同构 (利用 (1) 与传递性)

Pf: (1) 任取 $\alpha \in V$ ($\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$) 是个固定的基, 有 $\alpha = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \alpha_i$

规定坐标映射 $\varphi: V \rightarrow R^n$ 使得 $\varphi(\alpha) = \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{pmatrix} = x \in R^n$

可知: φ 是同构① φ 是一一的 (唯一定理)

$$\textcircled{2} \text{ 设 } \beta = \sum_{i=1}^n y_i \alpha_i, \quad \alpha = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \alpha_i$$

$$\alpha + \beta = \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i + y_i) \alpha_i, \quad \varphi(\alpha + \beta) = \begin{pmatrix} x_1 + y_1 \\ x_2 + y_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n + y_n \end{pmatrix} = x + y = \varphi(\alpha) + \varphi(\beta)$$

$$\text{且 } \varphi(k\alpha) = \begin{pmatrix} kx_1 \\ kx_2 \\ \vdots \\ kx_n \end{pmatrix} = kx = k\varphi(\alpha)$$

注: 利用同构可用 $R^n(C^n)$ 代表空间 V

线性映射: 若 V 与 W 是空间, $\varphi: V \rightarrow W$ 是映射, 且 $\varphi(\alpha + \beta) = \varphi(\alpha) + \varphi(\beta)$, $\varphi(k\alpha) = k\varphi(\alpha)$,

(保加法、保倍数), 称 φ 是 V 到 W 的线性映射

特别: 若 $V = W$ (同一空间) 称线性映射 $\varphi: V \rightarrow W$ 为线性变换

记号: $L(V, W)$ (V 到 W 的全体线性映射), $L(V, V)$ (全体线性变换),

可写 $\varphi \in L(V, W)$ 或 $\varphi: V \rightarrow W$

例子:

恒同映射: $I_V: V \rightarrow W$ 使得 $I_V(\alpha) = \alpha$, $\alpha \in V$ (是线性的)

零射: $0: V \rightarrow W$ 使得 $0(\alpha) = \bar{0} \in W$ ($\forall \alpha \in V$) (是线性的)

矩阵映射: 令 $A = A_{m \times n} \in R^{m \times n}$, 任取 $x = \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{pmatrix} \in R^n$

规定 $\mathcal{A}: R^n \rightarrow R^m$ 如下 $\mathcal{A}(x) \triangleq Ax = A \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{pmatrix} \in R^m$

$$\mathcal{A}(\alpha + \beta) = A(\alpha + \beta) = A\alpha + A\beta = \mathcal{A}(\alpha) + \mathcal{A}(\beta)$$

且 $\mathcal{A}(k\alpha) = k\mathcal{A}(\alpha) \Rightarrow \mathcal{A}$ 为线性的

以后常把 \mathcal{A} 写成映射: $\mathcal{A}: R^n \rightarrow R^m \quad x \mapsto Ax$

值空间 $R(A) = \{Ax | x \in R^n\} \subset R^m$

核: $N(A) = A^{-1}(0) = \{x | Ax = 0\} \subset R^n$

特别: n 阶方阵 $A = A_{n \times n} \in R^{n \times n}$, 有线性变换 $A: R^n \rightarrow R^n \quad A(x) = Ax \in R^n$

Ex. 预习《矩阵分析 (史荣昌等)》P24-44

P68 1 3 4 6 8 9

线性映射 (变换) 性质: 设 $\varphi: V \rightarrow W$ 为线性

保组合

把相关组变成相关组

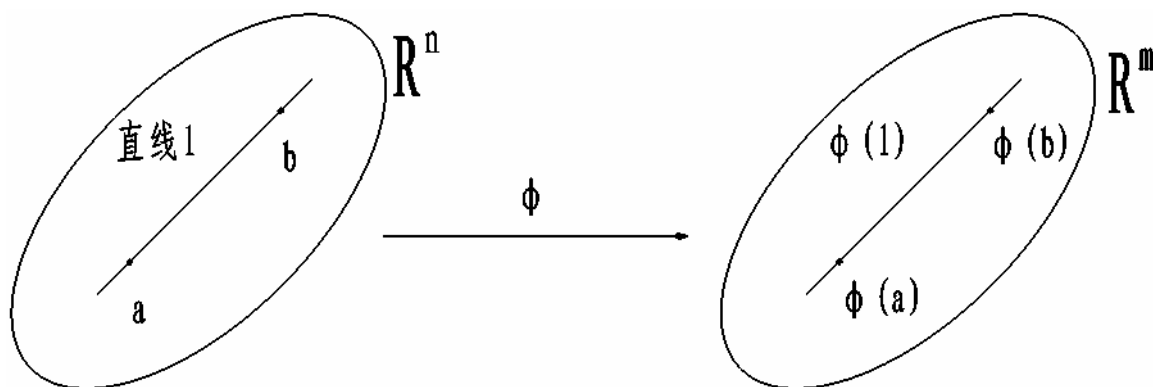
例如: $\varphi\left(\sum_{i=1}^n k_i \alpha_i\right) = \sum_{i=1}^n \varphi(k_i \alpha_i)$ (保组合系数)

几何定义: 线性映射 (变换) $\varphi: R^n \rightarrow R^m$

① φ 把直线变成直线 (或退化直线成一点)

② φ 把平行线变成平行 (重合) 线

Pf:



设 a, b 决定直线 $l = \{a + t(b - a) | t \in R\}$

\Rightarrow 像 $\varphi(l) = \{\varphi(a) + t[\varphi(b) - \varphi(a)] \mid t \in R\}$ 也是直线或退为一点

再设 α, β 是 2 条直线 l_1, l_2 的方向向量, 若 $l_1 // l_2 \Rightarrow \alpha // \beta \Rightarrow \alpha = k\beta$

$\varphi(\alpha) = k\varphi(\beta) \Rightarrow \varphi(\alpha) // \varphi(\beta) \Rightarrow \varphi(l_1) // \varphi(l_2)$ (或重合)

命题: 若 φ 为线性的, 且 $\varphi(\alpha_1), \varphi(\alpha_2), \dots, \varphi(\alpha_n)$ 线性无关, 则 $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ 也无关

Pf: 若 $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n \Rightarrow \varphi(\alpha_1), \varphi(\alpha_2), \dots, \varphi(\alpha_n)$ 相关

注: 若 $\varphi: V \rightarrow W$ 为线性, 且 φ 为一一的, 则 φ “把无关组变成无关组”

规定: ①任取广元 $\otimes_1, \otimes_2, \dots, \otimes_n$ 称记号 $(\otimes_1, \otimes_2, \dots, \otimes_n)$ 为一个广行

②若有“组合” $\alpha = \sum_{i=1}^n k_i \otimes_i$, 称公式 $\alpha = (\otimes_1, \otimes_2, \dots, \otimes_n) \begin{pmatrix} k_1 \\ k_2 \\ \vdots \\ k_n \end{pmatrix}$ 为广阵格式

要点: 要把组合系数写成列

若 $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_p$ 可由 $\otimes_1, \otimes_2, \dots, \otimes_n$ 组合表示:
$$\begin{cases} \alpha_1 = \sum_{i=1}^n k_{i1} \otimes_i \\ \alpha_2 = \sum_{i=1}^n k_{i2} \otimes_i \\ \vdots \\ \alpha_p = \sum_{i=1}^n k_{ip} \otimes_i \end{cases}$$

规定广阵格式如下: $(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_p) = (\otimes_1, \otimes_2, \dots, \otimes_n) B_{n \times p}$

$$B_{n \times p} = \left(\begin{pmatrix} k_{11} \\ k_{12} \\ \vdots \\ k_{1p} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} k_{21} \\ k_{22} \\ \vdots \\ k_{2p} \end{pmatrix} \cdots \begin{pmatrix} k_{n1} \\ k_{n2} \\ \vdots \\ k_{np} \end{pmatrix} \right)_{n \times p} \quad \text{记为 } (\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_p)$$

$$\text{即 } (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_p) = (\otimes_1, \otimes_2, \dots, \otimes_n) \begin{pmatrix} k_{11} & k_{21} & \cdots & k_{n1} \\ k_{12} & k_{22} & \cdots & k_{n2} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ k_{1p} & k_{2p} & \cdots & k_{np} \end{pmatrix}$$

广阵原理: ①一切线性组合都有广阵格式。

②若广元 $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_p$ 可由 e_1, e_2, \dots, e_n 表示,

则有广阵格式 $(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_p) = (e_1, e_2, \dots, e_n) B_{n \times p}$

要求: 系数阵 $B_{n \times p}$ 中的列就是组合系数

性质: (引理 1) 设 $\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n$ 是广元, I_n 为单位阵, 则

$$(1) (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) I_n$$

$$(2) \text{结合公式: } [(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) B] C = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) (BC)$$

(3) 消去律: (唯一性公式): 若 $\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n$ 无关 (基元), 且

$$(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) B = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) C \Leftrightarrow B = C$$

要证: $(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) B \varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n$ 无关 $(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) C \Rightarrow B = C$

$$\text{先证 } B, C \text{ 只有一列 } B = \begin{pmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \\ \vdots \\ b_n \end{pmatrix}, C = \begin{pmatrix} c_1 \\ c_2 \\ \vdots \\ c_n \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{令 } \alpha = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) B = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) C \Rightarrow \alpha = \sum_{i=1}^n b_i \varepsilon_i = \sum_{i=1}^n c_i \varepsilon_i \Rightarrow b_i = c_i \Rightarrow B = C$$

设 B, C 恰有 2 列 $B = (\beta_1, \beta_2)_{n \times 2}, C = (\gamma_1, \gamma_2)_{n \times 2}$

$$\text{由 } (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) (\beta_1, \beta_2) = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) (\gamma_1, \gamma_2)$$

$$\Leftrightarrow (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) \beta_1 = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) \gamma_1, (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) \beta_2 = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) \gamma_2$$

$$\Rightarrow \beta_1 = \gamma_1, \beta_2 = \gamma_2 \Rightarrow B = (\beta_1, \beta_2) = (\gamma_1, \gamma_2) = C$$

记号规定: $\varphi(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) \triangleq (\varphi(\varepsilon_1), \varphi(\varepsilon_2), \dots, \varphi(\varepsilon_n))$ ($\varphi: V \rightarrow W$ 是线性映射)

性质 (4): 若 φ 是线性映射, 则 $(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) B = [\varphi(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n)] B$ (右提取公式)

$$\text{Pf: 先设 } B \text{ 只有 1 列 } B = \begin{pmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \\ \vdots \\ b_n \end{pmatrix}$$

$$(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) B = \sum_{i=1}^n b_i \varepsilon_i$$

$$\Rightarrow \varphi[(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n)B] = \varphi\left(\sum_{i=1}^n b_i \varepsilon_i\right) = \sum_{i=1}^n b_i \varphi(\varepsilon_i) = (\varphi(\varepsilon_1), \varphi(\varepsilon_2), \dots, \varphi(\varepsilon_n)) \begin{pmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \\ \vdots \\ b_n \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\Rightarrow \varphi[(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n)B] = (\varphi(\varepsilon_1), \varphi(\varepsilon_2), \dots, \varphi(\varepsilon_n))B = \varphi(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n)B$$

若 $B = (\beta_1, \beta_2)_{n \times 2}$ 恰有 2 列，可同样证明

Eg. 设 $\varepsilon_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$, $\varepsilon_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$, $\alpha = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \in R^{2 \times 2}$

$$\alpha = \varepsilon_1 + 2\varepsilon_2 \Rightarrow \alpha = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2) \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}, \text{ 或 } \alpha = \left(\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \right) \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Eg. R^3 (行向量) 中取 $\varepsilon_1 = \overline{(1,0,0)}$, $\varepsilon_2 = \overline{(0,1,0)}$, $\varepsilon_3 = \overline{(0,0,1)}$

$$\alpha_1 = \overline{(1,1,2)}, \alpha_2 = \overline{(0,1,1)} \Rightarrow \alpha_1 = 1 \bullet \varepsilon_1 + 1 \bullet \varepsilon_2 + 2 \bullet \varepsilon_3, \alpha_2 = 0 \bullet \varepsilon_1 + 1 \bullet \varepsilon_2 + 1 \bullet \varepsilon_3$$

$$(\alpha_1, \alpha_2) = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \varepsilon_3) \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \text{ 或 } (\overline{(1,1,2)}, \overline{(0,1,1)}) = (\overline{(1,0,0)}, \overline{(0,1,0)}, \overline{(0,0,1)}) \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

改为“列向量” $\left(\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \right) = \left(\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \right) \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$

例如：线性组合必有广阵

$$(\text{甲}) = 3(\text{红}) + 7(\text{白}), (\text{乙}) = 4(\text{红}) + 6(\text{白}) \Leftrightarrow (\text{甲}, \text{乙}) = (\text{红}, \text{白}) \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 4 \\ 7 & 6 \end{pmatrix}$$

应用： 线性变换矩阵公式：设 $\varphi: V \rightarrow W$ 为线性的 $(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n)$ 为基

则有公式 $\varphi(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n)A$

其中 $A_{n \times n}$ 叫 φ 在基 $(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n)$ 下的矩阵（表示阵）

$$\text{Pf: 设: } \begin{cases} \varphi(\varepsilon_1) = \sum_{i=1}^n a_{i1} \varepsilon_i \\ \varphi(\varepsilon_2) = \sum_{i=1}^n a_{i2} \varepsilon_i \\ \vdots \\ \varphi(\varepsilon_n) = \sum_{i=1}^n a_{in} \varepsilon_i \end{cases}, \text{ 即 } \varphi(\varepsilon_1), \varphi(\varepsilon_2), \dots, \varphi(\varepsilon_n) \text{ 可由 } \varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n \text{ 表示}$$

由广阵原理 $\Rightarrow (\varphi(\varepsilon_1), \varphi(\varepsilon_2), \dots, \varphi(\varepsilon_n)) = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) A_{n \times n}$ (A 中列就是组合系数)

注：在给定基下， φ 有唯一矩阵 A (用消去律) $\Rightarrow \varphi \Leftrightarrow A$ 是一一对应的

V 到 V 全体线性变换集合 $L(V, V)$ 与方阵集合 $R^{n \times n}$ 可等同有 $L(V, V) \xrightarrow{\text{同构}} R^{n \times n}$

同理：若 $\varphi: V \rightarrow W$ ($\dim V = n, \dim W = m$) 为线性的

且 $(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n)$ 为 V 中基， (g_1, g_2, \dots, g_m) 为 W 中基

$\varphi(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) = (g_1, g_2, \dots, g_m) A_{m \times n} \Rightarrow \varphi \Leftrightarrow A_{m \times n}$ 为一一对应

广阵格式及应用

引理：(广阵原理)：一切线性组合都有广阵格式。

若广元 $\otimes_1, \otimes_2, \dots, \otimes_p$ 可由 $\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n$ “表示”

则有 $(\otimes_1, \otimes_2, \dots, \otimes_p) = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) B_{n \times p}$

其中系数阵 B 中列就是原组合系数

线性映射的矩阵 (表示阵)

设 $\varphi: V \rightarrow W$ 线性变换，固定基 $(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n)$ ， $\dim V = n$

则 $\varphi(\varepsilon_1), \varphi(\varepsilon_2), \dots, \varphi(\varepsilon_n)$ (在 V 中) 可由 $\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n$ 表示

有广阵格式 $(\varphi(\varepsilon_1), \varphi(\varepsilon_2), \dots, \varphi(\varepsilon_n)) = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) A_{n \times n}$

称 $A = A_{n \times n}$ 为 φ 在固定基下的矩阵 (表示阵)

注：固定基：每个线性变换 $\varphi: V \rightarrow W$ 对应一个唯一矩阵 A

即 $\varphi \Leftrightarrow A$ 是一一对应 (双射)

(利用消去法： $(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) A = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) B \Rightarrow A = B$)

消去前提：线性无关 (基就是线性无关的)

推论：全体线性变换空间 $L(V, V) \leftrightarrow R^{n \times n}$ (方阵空间) 是同构

可写 $L(V, V) \xrightarrow{\text{同构}} R^{n \times n}$ (实域上)， $L(V, V) = C^{n \times n}$ (复域上)

注：固定基 $\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n \in V$ ， $\forall \alpha \in V$ ， $\alpha = \sum_{i=1}^n a_i \varepsilon_i$

$$\alpha = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) \begin{pmatrix} a_1 \\ a_2 \\ \vdots \\ a_n \end{pmatrix}, \text{ 引入坐标同构 } \sigma: V \rightarrow R^n(C^n)$$

$$\text{使得 } \sigma(\alpha) = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 \\ a_2 \\ \vdots \\ a_n \end{pmatrix} \in R^n, \quad \alpha = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) \sigma(\alpha)$$

$$\text{令 } \begin{cases} \varphi(\varepsilon_1) = \sum_{i=1}^n a_{i1} \varepsilon_i = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} \\ a_{21} \\ \vdots \\ a_{n1} \end{pmatrix} = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) \sigma(\varepsilon_1) \\ \varphi(\varepsilon_2) = \sum_{i=1}^n a_{i2} \varepsilon_i = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) \begin{pmatrix} a_{12} \\ a_{22} \\ \vdots \\ a_{n2} \end{pmatrix} = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) \sigma(\varepsilon_2) \\ \vdots \\ \varphi(\varepsilon_n) = \sum_{i=1}^n a_{in} \varepsilon_i = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) \begin{pmatrix} a_{1n} \\ a_{2n} \\ \vdots \\ a_{nn} \end{pmatrix} = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) \sigma(\varepsilon_n) \end{cases}$$

$$\Rightarrow (\varphi(\varepsilon_1), \varphi(\varepsilon_2), \dots, \varphi(\varepsilon_n)) = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) (\sigma(\varepsilon_1), \sigma(\varepsilon_2), \dots, \sigma(\varepsilon_n))_{n \times n}$$

令 $\sigma: V \rightarrow R^n$ 为坐标同构映射, 则 $V \underline{\underline{\sigma}} R^n, L(V, V) \underline{\underline{\sigma}} R^{n \times n}$

推广: 设 $\varphi: V \rightarrow W$ 线性映射, 记为 $\varphi \in L(V, W)$ (全体线性映射)

固定基 $\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n \in V$, 再固定基 $g_1, g_2, \dots, g_m \in W$, ($\dim V = n, \dim W = m$)

$\varphi(\varepsilon_1), \varphi(\varepsilon_2), \dots, \varphi(\varepsilon_n)$ (在 W 中) 可由 g_1, g_2, \dots, g_m 表示

用广阵格式 $(\varphi(\varepsilon_1), \varphi(\varepsilon_2), \dots, \varphi(\varepsilon_n)) = (g_1, g_2, \dots, g_m) A_{m \times n}$

称 $A = A_{m \times n}$ 为 φ 在固定基下的矩阵 (表示阵)

可知: 每个 $\varphi \in L(V, W)$ 对应唯一的矩阵 $A = A_{m \times n}$

推论: (全体线性映射) $L(V, W)$ 在固定基下与 $R^{m \times n}$ 或 $C^{m \times n}$ 同构

可写 $L(V, W) \underline{\underline{\sigma}} R^{m \times n}$ 或 $L(V, W) \underline{\underline{\sigma}} C^{m \times n}$

规定: V^n 表示 n 维空间, W^m 表示 m 维空间

(全体线性映射) $L(V^n, W^m)$ (同构) $R^{m \times n}$ 或 $C^{m \times n}$

坐标公式: 固定基 $(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) \in V$, $(g_1, g_2, \dots, g_m) \in W$

$$\forall \alpha = \sum_{i=1}^n a_i \varepsilon_i, \quad \varphi(\alpha) = \sum_{i=1}^m b_i g_i$$

$$\text{取坐标: } \alpha \leftrightarrow x = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 \\ a_2 \\ \vdots \\ a_n \end{pmatrix} \in R^n, \quad \varphi(\alpha) \leftrightarrow y = \begin{pmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \\ \vdots \\ b_m \end{pmatrix} \in R^m, \quad \text{则 } y = A_{m \times n} x, \quad \text{即 } \begin{pmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \\ \vdots \\ b_m \end{pmatrix} = A_{m \times n} \begin{pmatrix} a_1 \\ a_2 \\ \vdots \\ a_n \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{Pf: } \alpha = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n)x \Rightarrow \varphi(\alpha) = (\varphi(\varepsilon_1), \varphi(\varepsilon_2), \dots, \varphi(\varepsilon_n))x = (g_1, g_2, \dots, g_m)A_{m \times n}x$$

$$\text{又写 } \varphi(\alpha) = (g_1, g_2, \dots, g_m)y \Rightarrow (g_1, g_2, \dots, g_m)Ax = (g_1, g_2, \dots, g_m)y \Rightarrow Ax = y$$

结论: 设 $\varphi \in L(V^n, W^m)$ (固定 2 个基), 则 $(\varphi(\varepsilon_1), \varphi(\varepsilon_2), \dots, \varphi(\varepsilon_n)) = (g_1, g_2, \dots, g_m)A_{m \times n}$

$$\forall \alpha \in V, \quad \alpha = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n)x, \quad \varphi(\alpha) = (g_1, g_2, \dots, g_m)y$$

则 $\varphi \leftrightarrow A$ 互相对应, $\alpha \rightarrow \varphi(\alpha)$ 可用 $x \rightarrow Ax$ 代替

即: 若 $\beta = \varphi(\alpha)$ 则可写 $y = Ax$

注: $A: R^n \rightarrow R^m$ 是线性映射, 可代替 $\varphi: V \rightarrow W$

Eg. 零映射 $\theta: V^n \rightarrow W^m$, 固定基 $(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n)$ 和 (g_1, g_2, \dots, g_m)

$$\forall \alpha \in V, \quad \theta(\alpha) = O \in W$$

$$\begin{cases} \theta(\varepsilon_1) = 0 = 0 \bullet g_1 + 0 \bullet g_2 + \dots + 0 \bullet g_m \\ \theta(\varepsilon_2) = 0 = 0 \bullet g_1 + 0 \bullet g_2 + \dots + 0 \bullet g_m \\ \vdots \\ \theta(\varepsilon_n) = 0 = 0 \bullet g_1 + 0 \bullet g_2 + \dots + 0 \bullet g_m \end{cases} \Rightarrow (\theta(\varepsilon_1), \theta(\varepsilon_2), \dots, \theta(\varepsilon_n)) = (g_1, g_2, \dots, g_m)O_{m \times n}$$

$$\theta \leftrightarrow O_{m \times n} \in R^{m \times n}$$

Eg. 恒同映射: $I_V: V \rightarrow V, \quad \forall \alpha \in V, \quad I_V(\alpha) = \alpha$

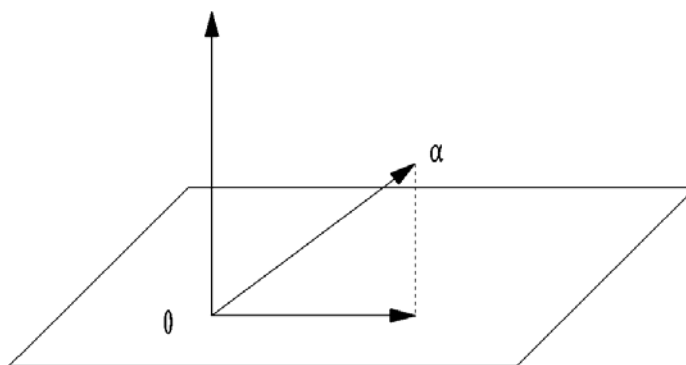
$$\begin{cases} I_V(\varepsilon_1) = \varepsilon_1 = 1 \bullet \varepsilon_1 + 0 \bullet \varepsilon_2 + \dots + 0 \bullet \varepsilon_n \\ I_V(\varepsilon_2) = \varepsilon_2 = 0 \bullet \varepsilon_1 + 1 \bullet \varepsilon_2 + \dots + 0 \bullet \varepsilon_n \\ \vdots \\ I_V(\varepsilon_n) = \varepsilon_n = 0 \bullet \varepsilon_1 + 0 \bullet \varepsilon_2 + \dots + 1 \bullet \varepsilon_n \end{cases} \Rightarrow I_V(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n)I_n$$

$$I_V \leftrightarrow I_n \text{ (单位阵)}$$

设 $\alpha = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n)x$, 则 $\varphi(\alpha)$ 坐标 $y = I_n x = x$

Eg. 设 $V = \text{span}(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n)$, $\varphi: V \rightarrow V$, $\alpha = \sum_{i=1}^n a_i \varepsilon_i \in V$

使得 $\varphi\left(\sum_{i=1}^n x_i \varepsilon_i\right) = x_1 \varepsilon_1 + x_2 \varepsilon_2$ (投影)



$$\because \begin{cases} \varphi(\varepsilon_1) = \varepsilon_1 = 1 \bullet \varepsilon_1 + 0 \bullet \varepsilon_2 + \dots + 0 \bullet \varepsilon_n \\ \varphi(\varepsilon_2) = \varepsilon_2 = 0 \bullet \varepsilon_1 + 1 \bullet \varepsilon_2 + \dots + 0 \bullet \varepsilon_n \\ \varphi(\varepsilon_3) = 0 = 0 \bullet \varepsilon_1 + 0 \bullet \varepsilon_2 + \dots + 0 \bullet \varepsilon_n \\ \vdots \\ \varphi(\varepsilon_n) = 0 = 0 \bullet \varepsilon_1 + 0 \bullet \varepsilon_2 + \dots + 0 \bullet \varepsilon_n \end{cases} \Rightarrow \varphi(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) A,$$

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

坐标公式: $y = Ax$, $x \in R^n$

Eg. V 基 $(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n)$, 取 $W = \text{span}(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2)$, $\varphi: V \rightarrow W$, $\varphi \in L(V, W)$

使得 $\varphi(\alpha) = \varphi\left(\sum_{i=1}^n x_i \varepsilon_i\right) = x_1 \varepsilon_1 + x_2 \varepsilon_2 \in W$ (投影)

$$\begin{cases} \varphi(\varepsilon_1) = \varepsilon_1 = 1 \bullet \varepsilon_1 + 0 \bullet \varepsilon_2 \\ \varphi(\varepsilon_2) = \varepsilon_2 = 0 \bullet \varepsilon_1 + 1 \bullet \varepsilon_2 \\ \varphi(\varepsilon_3) = 0 = 0 \bullet \varepsilon_1 + 0 \bullet \varepsilon_2 \\ \vdots \\ \varphi(\varepsilon_n) = 0 = 0 \bullet \varepsilon_1 + 0 \bullet \varepsilon_2 \end{cases} \Rightarrow \varphi(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2) \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & \dots & 0 \end{pmatrix}_{2 \times n}$$

Ex. 令 $V_n(x) = \text{span}(1, x, \dots, x^{n-1}) = \{f = a_0 + a_1 x + \dots + a_{n-1} x^{n-1} | a_i \in R\}$

(全体次数小于 n 的多项式空间)

(1) 令 $\varphi = \frac{d}{dx}: V \rightarrow V$ (求导), 求 φ 在基 $(1, x, \dots, x^{n-1})$ 的矩阵 A

(2) 令 $\varphi = \frac{d}{dx}: V_n(x) \rightarrow V_{n-1}(x)$ (求导), 求 φ 在基 $(1, x, \dots, x^{n-1})$ 与基 $(1, x, \dots, x^{n-2})$

下的矩阵。

换基公式: 设 V 中 2 个基 $(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n)$ 与 (g_1, g_2, \dots, g_n)

则它们互换表示 (由广阵格式) 可写: $(g_1, g_2, \dots, g_n) = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n)P$, ($P = P_{n \times n}$)

$(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) = (g_1, g_2, \dots, g_n)Q$, ($Q = Q_{n \times n}$)

则 P 可逆, 且 $Q = P^{-1}$, $(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) = (g_1, g_2, \dots, g_n)P^{-1}$

Pf: $\because (g_1, g_2, \dots, g_n) = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n)P$ 代入 $(g_1, g_2, \dots, g_n)QP$, (消去)

$$\therefore I_n = QP \Rightarrow Q = P^{-1}$$

称 P 是 (ε) 到 (g) 的过度阵

规定记号: $(\varepsilon) = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n)$, $(g) = (g_1, g_2, \dots, g_n)$ 。(2 个坐标系)

换基公式: $(g) = (\varepsilon)P$, $(\varepsilon) = (g)P^{-1}$

换坐标公式: 若 $\alpha = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \varepsilon_i = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n)x = (\varepsilon)x$

$$\text{且 } \alpha = \sum_{i=1}^n y_i g_i = (g_1, g_2, \dots, g_n)y = (g)y$$

$$\text{则有坐标公式 } x = Py \text{ 或 } y = P^{-1}x, \quad x = \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{pmatrix} \in R^n$$

$$\text{Pf: } \alpha = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{\text{写}} (\varepsilon)x, \text{ 且 } \alpha = (g_1, g_2, \dots, g_n) \begin{pmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \\ \vdots \\ y_n \end{pmatrix} = (g)y$$

$$\Rightarrow \alpha = (g)y \xrightarrow{\text{代入}} (\varepsilon)P^{-1}Py = (\varepsilon)x = \varepsilon \quad (\text{消去}) \Rightarrow Py = x$$

记号: $(\varepsilon) = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n)$, $(g) = (g_1, g_2, \dots, g_n)$, $\varphi(\varepsilon) = (\varphi(\varepsilon_1), \varphi(\varepsilon_2), \dots, \varphi(\varepsilon_n))$

换基相似定理: 设 $\varphi: V \rightarrow V$ 为线性变换, 固定 2 个基

$$(\varepsilon) = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n), \quad (g) = (g_1, g_2, \dots, g_n)$$

令 $\varphi(\varepsilon) = (\varepsilon)A$ (表示公式), $\varphi(g) = (g)B$ (第 2 表示)

$$(g) = (\varepsilon)P \text{ 或 } (\varepsilon) = (g)P^{-1} \text{ (换基公式)}$$

$$\text{则: } B = P^{-1}AP \quad \text{相似}$$

$$\text{Pf: } \varphi(g) = (g)B, \text{ 且 } \varphi(g) = \varphi((\varepsilon)P) = \varphi(\varepsilon)P = (\varepsilon)AP = (g)P^{-1}AP$$

$$(g)B = (g)P^{-1}AP \Rightarrow B = P^{-1}AP$$

Ex. 《矩阵分析 (史荣昌等)》P68 9 10 12 19

坐标与广阵格式应用

广阵原理: 若广元 $\otimes_1, \otimes_2, \dots, \otimes_p$ 可由 $\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n$ “表示”,

$$\text{则由公式 } (\otimes_1, \otimes_2, \dots, \otimes_p) = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n)B_{n \times p}$$

$$\text{Eg. } V = \text{span}(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n), \quad W = \text{span}(g_1, g_2)$$

固定基 $\{\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n\}, \{g_1, g_2\}$

$$\text{令线性映射 } \varphi: V \rightarrow W \quad \forall \alpha = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \varepsilon_i \in V$$

$$\text{使得 } \varphi(\alpha) = \varphi\left(\sum_{i=1}^n x_i \varepsilon_i\right) = x_1 g_1 + x_2 g_2$$

$$\begin{cases} \varphi(\varepsilon_1) = g_1 = 1 \bullet g_1 + 0 \bullet g_2 \\ \varphi(\varepsilon_2) = g_2 = 0 \bullet g_1 + 1 \bullet g_2 \\ \varphi(\varepsilon_3) = 0 = 0 \bullet g_1 + 0 \bullet g_2 \\ \vdots \\ \varphi(\varepsilon_n) = 0 = 0 \bullet g_1 + 0 \bullet g_2 \end{cases}$$

$$(\varphi(\varepsilon_1), \varphi(\varepsilon_2), \dots, \varphi(\varepsilon_n)) = (g_1, g_2) \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & \dots & 0 \end{pmatrix}_{2 \times n}$$

$$\text{简写 } \varphi(\varepsilon) = (g) \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & \dots & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$(\varepsilon) = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n), \quad (g) = (g_1, g_2), \quad \varphi(\varepsilon) = (\varphi(\varepsilon)) = (\varphi(\varepsilon_1), \varphi(\varepsilon_2), \dots, \varphi(\varepsilon_n))$$

令 $\varphi: V^n \rightarrow W^m$ 为线性的, 固定基 $(\varepsilon) = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n), (g) = (g_1, g_2, \dots, g_m)$

$$\text{则 } \varphi(\varepsilon) = (g)A_{m \times n}, \quad (\varphi(\varepsilon_1), \varphi(\varepsilon_2), \dots, \varphi(\varepsilon_n)) = (g_1, g_2, \dots, g_m)A_{m \times n}$$

$A_{m \times n}$ 叫 φ 的表示阵 (在固定基下)

换基相似公式: 设 $\varphi: V \rightarrow V$ 为线性的或 $\varphi \in L(V, V)$

$$\text{固定基 } (\varepsilon) = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n), \quad (g) = (g_1, g_2, \dots, g_n)$$

记: $\varphi(\varepsilon) = (\varepsilon)A_{n \times n}$ 或 $(\varphi(\varepsilon_1), \varphi(\varepsilon_2), \dots, \varphi(\varepsilon_n)) = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) A_{n \times n}$

$\varphi(g) = (g)B_{n \times n}$ 或 $(\varphi(g_1), \varphi(g_2), \dots, \varphi(g_n)) = (g_1, g_2, \dots, g_n) B$

$(g) = (\varepsilon)P$ (换基公式) 或 $(\varepsilon) = (g)P^{-1}$

则: $B = P^{-1}AP$ (相似)

推论: (1) 线性变换 $\varphi: V \rightarrow V$ 在不同基下的矩阵是相似关系

(2) 在复数域上可取一个基 $(g) = (g_1, g_2, \dots, g_n)$, 使 φ 在该基下的矩阵 B 是 Jordan

形, 即 $B = P^{-1}AP = \begin{pmatrix} J_1 & & \\ & J_2 & \\ & & \ddots \\ & & & J_s \end{pmatrix}$ (Jordan 形)

小结: 固定基下常用下列“替换”(替身)

(1) V^n 用 R^n 或 C^n 代替

(2) 广元 $\alpha \in V^n$ 可用坐标 $x = \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{pmatrix}$ 代替 ($\alpha = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \varepsilon_i$)

(3) 线性变换 $\varphi: V \rightarrow V$ 用矩阵代替

(4) 相元 $\varphi(\alpha)$ 用 Ax 代替

固定基 (ε) 下 $\begin{cases} (\alpha) \leftrightarrow (x) \in R^n \\ \varphi(\alpha) \leftrightarrow Ax \\ \varphi \leftrightarrow A \\ V^n \text{同构} \overline{R^n} \text{或} \overline{C^n} \\ L(V, V) = R^{n \times n} \end{cases}$

Eg. 设 $V = R(x)_n = \{f = a_0 + a_1x_1 + \dots + a_{n-1}x_{n-1} \mid a_i \in R\}$ (全体次数小于 n 的多项式)

$\dim V = n$, $\{1, x, \dots, x^{n-1}\}$ 是一个基

另 b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n 为互不相同的数

$$f_1(x) = (x - b_1) \overset{\wedge}{(x - b_2)} \cdots (x - b_n)$$

$$f_2(x) = (x - b_1) (x - \overset{\wedge}{b_2}) \cdots (x - b_n)$$

\vdots

$$f_n(x) = (x - b_1) \cdots (x - \overset{\wedge}{b_n})$$

“ \wedge ”表示删掉一项

$$f_j(x) = (x - b_1) \cdots (x - \overset{\wedge}{b_j}) \cdots (x - b_n)$$

$$g_1(x) = \frac{f_1(x)}{f_1(b_1)}, g_2(x) = \frac{f_2(x)}{f_2(b_2)}, \dots, g_n(x) = \frac{f_n(x)}{f_n(b_n)} \in V$$

$$\text{取值} \begin{cases} g_1(b_1) = \frac{f_1(b_1)}{f_1(b_1)} = 1, g_1(b_2) = 0, \dots, g_1(b_n) = 0 \\ g_2(b_1) = 0, g_2(b_2) = 1, \dots, g_2(b_n) = 0 \\ \vdots \\ g_n(b_1) = 0, g_n(b_2) = 0, \dots, g_n(b_n) = 1 \end{cases}$$

证明: (1) g_1, g_2, \dots, g_n 是 V 的基

(2) 求 (g_1, g_2, \dots, g_n) 到 $(1, x, \dots, x^{n-1})$ 的过渡阵 P

Pf: 引入映射 $\varphi: V \rightarrow R^n \quad \forall f \in V$

$$\varphi(f) \triangleq \begin{pmatrix} f(b_1) \\ f(b_2) \\ \vdots \\ f(b_n) \end{pmatrix}, \quad \varphi \text{ 是线性的: } \begin{aligned} \varphi(f+g) &= \varphi(f) + \varphi(g) \\ \varphi(kf) &= k\varphi(f) \end{aligned}$$

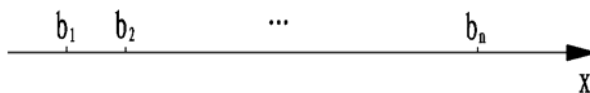
$$\Rightarrow \varphi(g_1) = \begin{pmatrix} g_1(b_1) \\ g_1(b_2) \\ \vdots \\ g_1(b_n) \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = e_1, \varphi(g_2) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = e_2, \dots, \varphi(g_n) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ \vdots \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = e_n \in R^n$$

$\Rightarrow \{\varphi(g_1) = e_1, \varphi(g_2) = e_2, \dots, \varphi(g_n) = e_n\}$ 为无关组 $\{g_1, g_2, \dots, g_n\}$ 也无关 (是基)

设换基公式 $(1, x, \dots, x^{n-1}) = (g_1, g_2, \dots, g_n)P$

$$\Rightarrow (\varphi(1), \varphi(x), \dots, \varphi(x^{n-1})) = (\varphi(g_1), \varphi(g_2), \dots, \varphi(g_n))P$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & b_1 & b_1^2 & \cdots & b_1^{n-1} \\ 1 & b_2 & b_2^2 & \cdots & b_2^{n-1} \\ 1 & b_3 & b_3^2 & \cdots & b_3^{n-1} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 1 & b_n & b_n^2 & \cdots & b_n^{n-1} \end{pmatrix} = I_n P \Rightarrow P = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & b_1 & b_1^2 & \cdots & b_1^{n-1} \\ 1 & b_2 & b_2^2 & \cdots & b_2^{n-1} \\ 1 & b_3 & b_3^2 & \cdots & b_3^{n-1} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 1 & b_n & b_n^2 & \cdots & b_n^{n-1} \end{pmatrix}$$



注: 固定 n 个不同点 b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n ;

$$\text{规定“取值映射”} \varphi(f) = \begin{pmatrix} f(b_1) \\ f(b_2) \\ \vdots \\ f(b_n) \end{pmatrix} \in R^n, \quad \varphi: V \rightarrow R^n \text{ 为线性}$$

$$\text{令 } \varphi(h) = \begin{pmatrix} h(b_1) \\ h(b_2) \\ \vdots \\ h(b_n) \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow \varphi(f+h) = \begin{pmatrix} f(b_1)+h(b_1) \\ f(b_2)+h(b_2) \\ \vdots \\ f(b_n)+h(b_n) \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} f(b_1) \\ f(b_2) \\ \vdots \\ f(b_n) \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} h(b_1) \\ h(b_2) \\ \vdots \\ h(b_n) \end{pmatrix}$$

$$f \equiv 1 \text{ 时, } \varphi(f) = \varphi(1) \begin{pmatrix} f(b_1) \\ f(b_2) \\ \vdots \\ f(b_n) \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ \vdots \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

实际上: $\varphi: V = R(x) \rightarrow R^n$ 是同构, $R(x)_n$ 同构 φR^n

0 点引理: 固定 b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n (互异); $g_1(x), g_2(x), \dots, g_n(x)$ 同上

$$\text{则: (1) } 1 = \sum_{i=1}^n g_i(x); \quad (2) \quad x = \sum_{i=1}^n b_i g_i(x);$$

$$(3) \quad g_i(x) g_j(x) \text{ 含有因子 } (x-b_1)(x-b_2) \dots (x-b_n) \quad (i \neq j)$$

$$\text{Pf: } \because (1, x, \dots, x^{n-1}) = (g_1, g_2, \dots, g_n)P; \quad P = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & b_1 & b_1^2 & \dots & b_1^{n-1} \\ 1 & b_2 & b_2^2 & \dots & b_2^{n-1} \\ 1 & b_3 & b_3^2 & \dots & b_3^{n-1} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 1 & b_n & b_n^2 & \dots & b_n^{n-1} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{cases} 1 = \sum_{i=1}^n g_i(x) \\ x = \sum_{i=1}^n b_i g_i(x) \\ \vdots \\ x^{n-1} = \sum_{i=1}^n b_i^{n-1} g_i(x) \end{cases}, \text{ 有 } x^k = \sum_{i=1}^n b_i^k g_i(x)$$

(3) 例如

$$g_1(x) = \frac{f_1(x)}{f_1(b_1)} = \frac{(x-\hat{b}_1)(x-b_2)\dots(x-b_n)}{f_1(b_1)} \Rightarrow g_1(x)g_2(x) = (x-b_1)(x-b_2)\dots(x-b_n)(\dots)$$

$$g_2(x) = \frac{f_2(x)}{f_2(b_2)} = \frac{(x-b_1)(x-\hat{b}_2)\dots(x-b_n)}{f_2(b_2)}$$

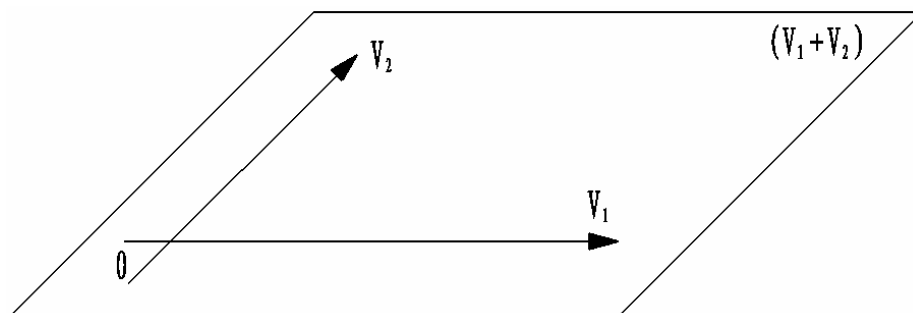
推论: 固定 b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n 与 $g_1(x), g_2(x), \dots, g_n(x)$ 任取方阵 $A = A_{p \times p}$

$$\text{有 (1) } I = \sum_{i=1}^n g_i(A); \quad (2) \quad A = \sum_{i=1}^n b_i g_i(A)$$

和空间定义： 设 V_1, V_2 是子空间

称 $V_1 + V_2 \triangleq \{\text{全体 } \alpha_1 + \alpha_2 \mid \alpha_1 \in V_1, \alpha_2 \in V_2\}$ 为 V_1, V_2 的和 (可知 $V_1 + V_2$ 是子空间)

注： 并集 $V_1 \cup V_2$ 一般不是子空间, $V_1 \cup V_2 \subset V_1 + V_2$



同理 V_1, V_2, V_3 为子空间, 可定义 $V_1 + V_2 + V_3 = \{\text{全体 } \alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + \alpha_3 \mid \alpha_i \in V_i\}$

维数公式： $\dim(V_1 + V_2) = \dim V_1 + \dim V_2 - \dim(V_1 \cap V_2)$

或 $\text{rank}(V_1 + V_2) = \text{rank } V_1 + \text{rank } V_2 - \text{rank}(V_1 \cap V_2)$

直和定义： 设 V_1, V_2 为子空间, 且 0 元具有唯一分解性

即: $0 = \alpha_1 + \alpha_2 \quad (\alpha_1 \in V_1, \alpha_2 \in V_2)$ 必有 $\alpha_1 = 0, \alpha_2 = 0$

称 $V_1 + V_2$ 为直和, 记为 $V_1 \oplus V_2$

定理： $V_1 + V_2$ 为直和 $V_1 \oplus V_2 \Leftrightarrow V_1 \cap V_2 = \{0\}$

同理: 3 个子空间 V_1, V_2, V_3

若 0 元具有唯一分解: $0 = \alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + \alpha_3 \Rightarrow \alpha_1 = 0, \alpha_2 = 0, \alpha_3 = 0 \quad (\alpha_i \in V_i)$

则称 $V_1 + V_2 + V_3$ 为直和, 记为 $V_1 \oplus V_2 \oplus V_3$

直和维数公式： $\dim(V_1 \oplus V_2) = \dim V_1 + \dim V_2$

$\dim(V_1 \oplus V_2 \oplus V_3) = \dim V_1 + \dim V_2 + \dim V_3$

补空间： 若 $V_1 + V_2 = V$ (全空间) 且 $V_1 \cap V_2 = \{0\}$, 即 $V_1 \oplus V_2 = V$

称 V_2 为 V_1 的补空间

注： V_1 的补空间可能很多

生成元公式： 设 $V_1 = \text{span}(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_s), V_2 = \text{span}(\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_t)$

则 $V_1 + V_2 = \text{span}(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_s, \beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_t)$

注: $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_s, \beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_t\}$ 未必无关

同构方法 (替身法)

先固定基 $(\varepsilon) = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n)$, 空间为 $V = \text{span}(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n)$

固定基 $(g) = (g_1, g_2, \dots, g_m)$, 空间为 $W = \text{span}(g_1, g_2, \dots, g_m)$

可用下列代替法:

(1) $\alpha \in V$ 写成坐标 $x = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)^T \in R^n$ 或 C^n ($\because V \cong R^n$ 或 C^n)

$\beta \in W$ 写成坐标 $y = (y_1, y_2, \dots, y_m)^T \in R^m$ 或 C^m ($\because W \cong R^m$ 或 C^m)

(2) 线性变换: $\varphi \in L(V, V)$ 写成方阵 $A_{n \times n}$ 且有表示公式: $\varphi(\varepsilon) = (\varepsilon) A_{n \times n}$

公式: $\varphi(\varepsilon) = \lambda \alpha$ 写成 $Ax = \lambda x$

(3) $\varphi(\alpha)$ 写成 Ax

(4) 映射 $\varphi \in L(V, W)$ 写成矩阵 $A_{m \times n} = A$, 有表示公式: $\varphi(\varepsilon) = (g) A_{m \times n}$

(5) $\varphi(\alpha)$ 写成 $A_{m \times n} x$, 公式 $\varphi(\alpha) = \beta$ 写成 $A_{m \times n} x = y$ (坐标公式)

注: 若 $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_s$ 无关, 则坐标 X_1, X_2, \dots, X_s 也无关

一般秩 $\text{rank}(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_s) = \text{rank}(X_1, X_2, \dots, X_s)$

Ex. 取 $\alpha_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \alpha_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \alpha_3 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix}, \alpha_4 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$ 为 $R^{2 \times 2}$ 中基, 且 φ 是线性的

$$\varphi(\alpha_1) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \varphi(\alpha_2) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \varphi(\alpha_3) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \varphi(\alpha_4) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

求 φ 的表示矩阵 (公式)

解: 利用 “拉直同构” 可写

$$\alpha_1 = (1, 0, 1, 1)^T, \alpha_2 = (0, 1, 1, 1)^T, \alpha_3 = (1, 1, 0, 2)^T, \alpha_4 = (1, 3, 1, 0)^T \in R^4$$

$$\varphi(\alpha_1) = (1, 1, 0, 0)^T, \varphi(\alpha_2) = (0, 0, 0, 0)^T, \varphi(\alpha_3) = (0, 0, 1, 1)^T, \varphi(\alpha_4) = (0, 1, 0, 1)^T \in R^4$$

设表示公式: $\varphi(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3, \alpha_4) = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3, \alpha_4)A$

$$(\varphi(\alpha_1), \varphi(\alpha_2), \varphi(\alpha_3), \varphi(\alpha_4)) = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3, \alpha_4)A$$

$$A = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3, \alpha_4)^{-1} (\varphi(\alpha_1), \varphi(\alpha_2), \varphi(\alpha_3), \varphi(\alpha_4)) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 3 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \end{pmatrix}^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

映射: $\varphi \in L(V, W)$ 的相空间 (值域) 与核

规定：相空间为 $\mathcal{R}(\varphi) = \varphi(V) = \{\varphi(\alpha) | \alpha \in V\} \subset W$

核空间为 $\mathcal{N}(\varphi) = \varphi^{-1}(0) = \{\alpha | \varphi(\alpha) = 0\} \subset V$

(1) 相空间的秩为： $\text{rank}(\varphi) = \dim \mathcal{R}(\varphi) = \text{rank } \mathcal{R}(\varphi)$ ，也叫映射 φ 的秩数

(2) 核空间的维数（秩数）： $\text{rank } \mathcal{N}(\varphi) = \dim \mathcal{N}(\varphi)$ 也叫 φ 的 0 度

0 度公式： $\dim \mathcal{N}(\varphi) + \dim \mathcal{R}(\varphi) = n \quad \varphi \in L(V^n, W^m)$

或 $\text{rank}(\varphi^{-1}(0)) + \text{rank}(\varphi) = n$

注： φ 写成 $A = A_{m \times n}$

$\varphi^{-1}(0) = \{\alpha | \varphi(\alpha) = 0\}$ 写成 $A^{-1}(0) = \{x | Ax = 0\}$ （解空间）

相空间 $\mathcal{R}(\varphi) = \{\varphi(\alpha) | \alpha \in V\}$ 写成 $\mathcal{R}(A) = \{Ax | x \in R^n\}$

规定： $A = A_{m \times n}$ 的列空间为 $\mathcal{R}(A) = \{Ax | x \in R^n\} \subset R^m$

$A = A_{m \times n}$ 的核空间 $\mathcal{N}(A) = A^{-1}(0) = \{x | Ax = 0\} \subset R^n$ （解空间）

改写 $A_{m \times n} = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n)$, $A_{m \times n} x = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \alpha_i$, $x = \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{pmatrix}$

$\Rightarrow \mathcal{R}(A) = \{Ax\} = \left\{ \text{全体} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \alpha_i \right\} = \text{span}(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n)$ （由 $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ 生成）

$\Rightarrow \dim \mathcal{R}(A) = \text{rank } \mathcal{R}(A) = \text{rank}(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n) = \text{rank}(A)$

由公式 $\text{rank } A^{-1}(0) + \text{rank}(A) = n \Rightarrow \text{rank } \varphi^{-1}(0) + \text{rank}(\varphi) = n$

$A_{m \times n} x = 0$ 的基础解有 $(n-r)$ 个 $\xi_1, \xi_2, \dots, \xi_{n-1}$, $r = \text{rank}(A)$, 通解： $x = \sum_{i=1}^{n-r} c_i \xi_i$

\Rightarrow 核 $\mathcal{N}(A) = A^{-1}(0) = \{x | Ax = 0\} = \text{span}(\xi_1, \xi_2, \dots, \xi_{n-1})$ （解空间）

$\Rightarrow \dim \mathcal{N}(A) = \text{rank } \mathcal{N}(A) = \text{rank}(\xi_1, \xi_2, \dots, \xi_{n-1}) = n - r$

$\Rightarrow \text{rank } \mathcal{N}(A) = n - \text{rank}(A) \Leftrightarrow \text{rank } \mathcal{N}(A) + \text{rank}(A) = n$

引理： $\varphi \in L(V^n, W^m)$ 写成 $A = A_{m \times n}$, $R^n \rightarrow R^m$

则：(1) $\text{rank}(\varphi) = \text{rank}(A) = \text{rank } \mathcal{R}(A)$ （列空间维数）

(2) $\text{rank}(\varphi^{-1}(0)) = \text{rank}(A^{-1}(0))$ 或 $\text{rank } \mathcal{N}(\varphi) = \text{rank } \mathcal{N}(A)$

φ 与 A 的不变子空间:

设 $\varphi \in L(V, V)$ 固定基下, 可写 $A \in L(R^n \rightarrow R^n)$

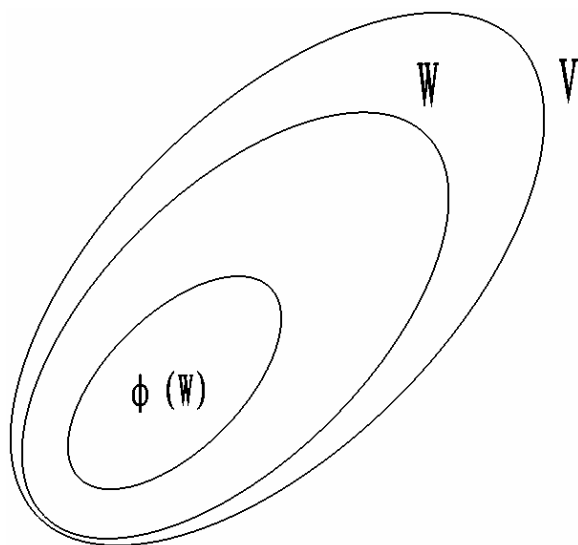
若子空间 $W \subset V$ 使得 $\forall \alpha \in W, \varphi(\alpha) \in W$

即 $\varphi(W) \subset W$, 称 W 是 φ 的不变子空间

平凡不变子空间 $\{0\}$ 与 V 都是 φ 的不变子空间

取特征子空间 $V(\lambda) = \{\alpha | \varphi(\alpha) = \lambda\alpha\} = \{\alpha | (\varphi - \lambda I)\alpha = 0\}$ (λ 的特征向量含 $\vec{0}$)

$V(\lambda)$ 是 φ 的不变子空间, 若 $\alpha \in V(\lambda)$, 验证: $\varphi(\alpha) \in V(\lambda)$



$A = A_{n \times n}$ 的不变子空间 $W \subset R^n$ (或 C^n)

使得 $A(W) \subset W$, 即任何 $x \in W, Ax \in W$

特征子空间 $V(\lambda) = \{x | Ax = \lambda x\} = \{x | (A - \lambda I)x = 0\}$ 是 A 的不变子空间

引理: 若 $W = \text{span}(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_r)$ 是 $V = \text{span}(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n)$ 中子空间

$(\varepsilon) = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_r)$ 为基, $\varphi \in L(V, V)$

设 W 是 φ 的不变子空间, 则有表示阵 $A = \begin{pmatrix} A_{r \times r} & (*) \\ 0 & (*) \end{pmatrix}_{n \times n}$

$$\text{Pf: 由定义: } \begin{cases} \varphi(\varepsilon_1) = (*)\varepsilon_1 + (*)\varepsilon_2 + \cdots + (*)\varepsilon_r + 0 \bullet \varepsilon_{r+1} + \cdots + 0 \bullet \varepsilon_n \\ \varphi(\varepsilon_2) = (*)\varepsilon_1 + (*)\varepsilon_2 + \cdots + (*)\varepsilon_r + 0 \bullet \varepsilon_{r+1} + \cdots + 0 \bullet \varepsilon_n \\ \vdots \\ \varphi(\varepsilon_r) = (*)\varepsilon_1 + (*)\varepsilon_2 + \cdots + (*)\varepsilon_r + 0 \bullet \varepsilon_{r+1} + \cdots + 0 \bullet \varepsilon_n \\ \varphi(\varepsilon_{r+1}) = (*)\varepsilon_1 + (*)\varepsilon_2 + \cdots + (*)\varepsilon_n \\ \vdots \\ \varphi(\varepsilon_n) = (*)\varepsilon_1 + (*)\varepsilon_2 + \cdots + (*)\varepsilon_n \end{cases}$$

$$\Rightarrow (\varphi(\varepsilon_1), \varphi(\varepsilon_2), \dots, \varphi(\varepsilon_n)) = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_r) \begin{pmatrix} (A_{r \times r}) & (*) \\ 0 & (*) \end{pmatrix}$$

定理: 若 $\varphi \in L(V, V)$ 有 2 个不变子空间 $W_1, W_2 \subset V$, 且 $W_1 \oplus W_2 = V$ (直和)

可设 $W_1 = \text{span}(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_r)$, $W_2 = \text{span}(\varepsilon_{r+1}, \varepsilon_{r+2}, \dots, \varepsilon_n)$

则 φ 的矩阵为 $A = \begin{pmatrix} A_1 & 0 \\ 0 & A_2 \end{pmatrix}$ 记为 $A = A_1 \oplus A_2$

注: 若 W 是 φ 的不变子空间, 限制映射 $\varphi|_W: W \rightarrow W$ 是 W 到 W 的线性变换

引理: (1) 复数域上方阵 $A = A_{n \times n}$ 必有特征值与特征向量, 使得 $Ax = \lambda x$ ($x \neq \vec{0}$)

(2) 复数域上, 线性变换 $\varphi \in L(V, V)$, $\dim V = n$, 必有特征向量 $\exists \alpha: \varphi(\alpha) = \lambda \alpha$
($\alpha \neq 0$)

(3) 设 W 是 $\varphi \in L(V, V)$ 的不变子空间, 则 φ 在 W 上必有特征向量 $\exists \alpha \in W: \varphi(\alpha) = \lambda \alpha$
($\alpha \neq 0$) ($\because \varphi|_W: W \rightarrow W$ 也是线性变换)

Ex. 若 $AB = BA$ (A, B 是方阵), 令 $V(\lambda) = \{x | Ax = \lambda x\}$ (特征子空间)

证明: (1) $V(\lambda)$ 是 A 与 B 的不变子空间

(2) $V(\lambda)$ 中有一个 $x \neq 0$ 是 B 的特征向量 (用引理 (3))

(3) A, B 有公共特征向量

线性变换的规范表示

R^n 中规范基 $e_1 = (1, 0, \dots, 0)^T, e_2 = (0, 1, \dots, 0)^T, \dots, e_n = (0, 0, \dots, 1)^T \in R^n$

R^m 中规范基 $\tilde{e}_1 = (1, 0, \dots, 0)^T, \tilde{e}_2 = (0, 1, \dots, 0)^T, \dots, \tilde{e}_m = (0, 0, \dots, 1)^T \in R^m$

$$x = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)^T \in R^n, \quad x = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i e_i$$

$$y = (y_1, y_2, \dots, y_m)^T \in R^m, \quad y = \sum_{i=1}^m y_i \tilde{e}_i$$

规范公式: 每个线性的 $\varphi: R^n \rightarrow R^m$ 或 $\varphi \in L(R^n, R^m)$ 都有一个 (唯一的) 矩阵

$$A = A_{m \times n} \in R^{m \times n}, \text{ 使得 } \varphi(x) = Ax, \quad x \in R^n, \text{ 其中 } A = (\varphi(e_1), \varphi(e_2), \dots, \varphi(e_n))_{m \times n}$$

$$\text{Pf: } \because x = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)^T = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i e_i, \quad \varphi(x) = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \varphi(e_i) = (\varphi(e_1), \varphi(e_2), \dots, \varphi(e_n)) \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{令 } A = (\varphi(e_1), \varphi(e_2), \dots, \varphi(e_n)) = A_{m \times n} \in R^{m \times n} \Rightarrow \varphi(x) = A \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{pmatrix} = Ax$$

实际上: φ 在规范基 (e_1, e_2, \dots, e_n) 与 $(\tilde{e}_1, \tilde{e}_2, \dots, \tilde{e}_m)$ 下的表示公式

$$\varphi(e_1, e_2, \dots, e_n) = (\tilde{e}_1, \tilde{e}_2, \dots, \tilde{e}_m) A_{m \times n}, \text{ 其中 } (\tilde{e}_1, \tilde{e}_2, \dots, \tilde{e}_m) = I_m \text{ (单位阵)}$$

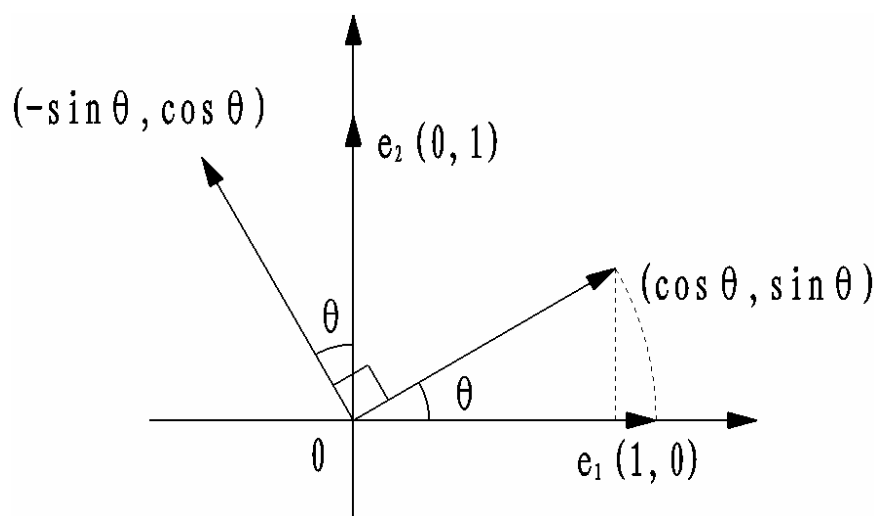
$$\Rightarrow \varphi(e_1, e_2, \dots, e_n) = A_{m \times n}$$

在实用中, 可把 $\varphi: R^n \rightarrow R^m$ 写成 $A: R^n \rightarrow R^m$ (可写 $\varphi = A$)

矩阵 $A = A_{m \times n}$ 有双重身份: (1) A 是矩阵; (2) $A: R^n \rightarrow R^m$ ($A \in L(R^n, R^m)$) 为线性映射

注: 若 R^n 中为行向量, 在公式中应该为列向量

Eg. 令 θ 旋转 $\varphi: R^2 \rightarrow R^2$, 求 $A = A_{2 \times 2}$ 使得 $\varphi(x) = Ax$



$$\because \varphi(e_1) = (\cos \theta, \sin \theta)^T = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta \\ \sin \theta \end{pmatrix}, \quad \varphi(e_2) = \begin{pmatrix} -\sin \theta \\ \cos \theta \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{令 } A = (\varphi(e_1), \varphi(e_2)) = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & -\sin \theta \\ \sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\Rightarrow \text{公式 } \varphi(x) = Ax = A \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \cos \theta - x_2 \sin \theta \\ x_1 \sin \theta + x_2 \cos \theta \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{令 } y = Ax, \quad y = \begin{pmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow \begin{cases} y_1 = x_1 \cos \theta - x_2 \sin \theta \\ y_2 = x_1 \sin \theta + x_2 \cos \theta \end{cases}$$

Eg. 令 $\varphi \in L(R^3, R^2)$, 即 $\varphi: R^3 \rightarrow R^2$ 为线性

$$\text{使得: } \varphi(x) = (x_1 + x_2, x_2 + x_3)^T, \quad \forall x = (x_1, x_2, x_3)^T \in R^3$$

$$\text{求 } A = A_{2 \times 3} \text{ 使得 } \varphi(x) = Ax$$

解: $\varphi(e_1) = \varphi(1, 0, 0)^T = (1, 0)^T$, $\varphi(e_2) = \varphi(0, 1, 0)^T = (1, 1)^T$, $\varphi(e_3) = \varphi(0, 0, 1)^T = (0, 1)^T$

$$A = (\varphi(e_1), \varphi(e_2), \varphi(e_3)) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}_{2 \times 3}$$

$$\text{计算 } \varphi(x) = A \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x_1 + x_2 \\ x_2 + x_3 \end{pmatrix}$$

一般表示公式: 设 $(\varepsilon) = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n)$, $(g) = (g_1, g_2, \dots, g_m)$ 分别为

$\varphi: R^n \rightarrow R^m$ 为线性的

$$\text{设表示式: } \varphi(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n) = (g_1, g_2, \dots, g_m)A$$

$$\text{则有: } A = (g_1, g_2, \dots, g_m)^{-1}(\varphi(\varepsilon_1), \varphi(\varepsilon_2), \dots, \varphi(\varepsilon_n))$$

其中 (g_1, g_2, \dots, g_m) 为可逆方阵

方法: 可用行变换 $(g_1, g_2, \dots, g_m | \varphi(\varepsilon_1), \varphi(\varepsilon_2), \dots, \varphi(\varepsilon_n)) \xrightarrow{\text{行变}} (I_m | A)$ 求出 A

注: $R^{m \times n}$ 中的矩阵 $A = (a_{ij})_{m \times n}$, $B = (b_{ij})_{m \times n}$

$$\text{可用“拉直法”: } A \rightarrow \vec{A} = (a_{11}, a_{12}, \dots, a_{mn})^T \in R^{mn}, \quad B \rightarrow \vec{B} = (b_{11}, b_{12}, \dots, b_{mn})^T \in R^{mn}$$

“ \rightarrow ”: $R^{m \times n} \rightarrow R^{mn}$ 为线性 (同构)

$$\overrightarrow{(A+B)} = \overrightarrow{(a_{ij} + b_{ij})} = (a_{11} + b_{11}, \dots, a_{mn} + b_{mn})^T = (a_{11}, \dots, a_{mn})^T + (b_{11}, \dots, b_{mn})^T = \vec{A} + \vec{B}$$

$$\text{同理 } \overrightarrow{(kA)} = k\vec{A}$$

应用：若 $\varphi: R^{2 \times 2} \rightarrow R^{2 \times 2}$ 为线性，取基 $(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \varepsilon_3, \varepsilon_4), (g_1, g_2, g_3, g_4)$

由公式 $\varphi(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \varepsilon_3, \varepsilon_4) = (g_1, g_2, g_3, g_4)A_{4 \times 4}$

拉直 $(\overline{\varphi(\varepsilon_1)}, \overline{\varphi(\varepsilon_2)}, \overline{\varphi(\varepsilon_3)}, \overline{\varphi(\varepsilon_4)}) = (\bar{g}_1, \bar{g}_2, \bar{g}_3, \bar{g}_4)A$

$\Rightarrow A = (\bar{g}_1, \bar{g}_2, \bar{g}_3, \bar{g}_4)^{-1}(\overline{\varphi(\varepsilon_1)}, \overline{\varphi(\varepsilon_2)}, \overline{\varphi(\varepsilon_3)}, \overline{\varphi(\varepsilon_4)})$

实用中可写： $\alpha = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \\ a_3 & a_4 \end{pmatrix} = (a_1, a_2, a_3, a_4)^T$

Ex.1. 令 $\varphi: R^2 \rightarrow R^3$ 为线性的

且 $\forall x \in R^2, \varphi(x) = (x_2, x_1 + x_2, x_1 - x_2)^T$

(1) 求规范公式 $\varphi(x) = Ax$ 中的 A

(2) 若取基 $(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2)$ 与 (g_1, g_2, g_3) ，其中 $\varepsilon_1 = (1, 2)^T, \varepsilon_2 = (3, 1)^T, g_1 = (1, 0, 0)^T, g_2 = (1, 1, 0)^T, g_3 = (1, 1, 1)^T$ ，求公式 $\varphi(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2) = (g_1, g_2, g_3)B$ 中的表示阵 B （可用初等行变换求 B ）

线性变换应用参考书： Steven Leon 《线性代数与应用》

§4 应用 1：计算机图形与动画设计；应用 2：飞机运动矩阵表示

§3 欧式空间与QR分解

标准欧式空间： R^n 中引入标准内积（点积）

标准内积（点积） $x \bullet y = (x, y) = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) \bullet (y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n) = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i y_i$

有公式： $x \bullet y = (x, y) = x^T y = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) \begin{pmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \\ \vdots \\ y_n \end{pmatrix} = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i y_i, \quad x \bullet x = x^T x = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2$

长度公式： $|x| = \sqrt{x \bullet x} = \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2}, \quad |x|^2 = x \bullet x = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2$

正交（垂直）： $x \perp y \Leftrightarrow x \bullet y = (x, y) = 0$

勾股定理： (1) $x \perp y \Rightarrow (x \pm y)^2 = |x|^2 + |y|^2$

$$(2) \quad x \perp y \Rightarrow (kx \pm ly)^2 = k^2|x|^2 + l^2|y|^2 \quad (\because kx \perp ly)$$

正交组与正交基： 若 $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_s \in R^n$ 互相正交（且非 0）， $(\alpha_1 \perp \alpha_2 \perp \dots \perp \alpha_s)$

称 $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_s$ 为一个正交组

称生成空间 $W = \text{span}(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_s)$ 中有正交基 $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_s$

若单位化： $\varepsilon_1 = \frac{\alpha_1}{|\alpha_1|}, \varepsilon_2 = \frac{\alpha_2}{|\alpha_2|}, \dots, \varepsilon_s = \frac{\alpha_s}{|\alpha_s|}$ ，可得单位（规范）正交组（基） $\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_s$

定义： 若 $\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_s \in R^n$ 为单位正交组（基）

称矩阵 $A = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_s)_{n \times s}$ 为正交高阵（次正交阵） $(s \leq n)$

特别： $s = n$ 时 $\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n$ 为 R^n 中正交基

称 $A = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_n)_{n \times n}$ 为正交阵

$$\text{例：} A = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2) = \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1/2 & 1/2 \\ 1/2 & -1/2 \end{pmatrix} \text{ 为正交高阵}$$

$$\varepsilon_1 \perp \varepsilon_2 \Leftrightarrow \varepsilon_1 \bullet \varepsilon_2 = 0$$

$$\text{计算 } A^T A = \begin{pmatrix} \varepsilon_1^T \\ \varepsilon_2^T \end{pmatrix} (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = I_2$$

正交高阵性质： $A = A_{n \times s}$ 为次正交 $A^T A = I_s$

$$\text{Pf: } A = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_s), \quad A^T = \begin{pmatrix} \varepsilon_1^T \\ \varepsilon_2^T \\ \vdots \\ \varepsilon_s^T \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow A^T A = \begin{pmatrix} \varepsilon_1^T \\ \varepsilon_2^T \\ \vdots \\ \varepsilon_s^T \end{pmatrix} (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_s) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & & 0 \\ & 1 & \\ 0 & & \ddots \\ & & & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

特别： $A = A_{n \times n}$ 为正交阵 $\Leftrightarrow A^T A = I_n$ （此时 $A^T = A^{-1}$ ）

QR 公式： 若 $A = A_{n \times s} = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_s)$ ，秩为 $\text{rank}(A) = s$ ， $(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_s$ 无关)

则有正交高阵 $Q = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_s)_{n \times s}$ 与上三角阵 $R = R_{n \times s}$

$$\text{使得 } A = QR = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_s) \begin{pmatrix} t_1 & & & (*) \\ & t_2 & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ 0 & & & t_s \end{pmatrix}$$

Ex. 《矩阵分析》P70 12 (1) (2) 13 P68 3 6

QR 分解: 若 $A = A_{n \times s} = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_s)$ 为高阵, ($\text{rank}(A) =$ 列数)

则分解 $A = QR$ 基中 $Q = Q_{n \times s}$ 为正交高阵 (次正交阵), R 为上三角

Pf: 由许米特 (Schmidt) 正交公式

$$\begin{aligned} \beta_1 &= \alpha_1 \\ \beta_2 &= \alpha_2 - \frac{(\alpha_2 \bullet \beta_1)}{|\beta_1|^2} \beta_1 \\ \text{令 } \vdots \\ \beta_s &= \alpha_s - \frac{(\alpha_s \bullet \beta_1)}{|\beta_1|^2} \beta_1 - \frac{(\alpha_s \bullet \beta_2)}{|\beta_2|^2} \beta_2 - \dots - \frac{(\alpha_s \bullet \beta_{s-1})}{|\beta_{s-1}|^2} \beta_{s-1} \end{aligned}$$

注: 此时 $\beta_1 \perp \beta_2 \perp \dots \perp \beta_s$ (互正交)

且 $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_s$ 与 $\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_s$ 互相表示

$$\begin{cases} \alpha_1 = \beta_1 \\ \alpha_2 = (*)\beta_1 + \beta_2 \\ \vdots \\ \alpha_s = (*)\beta_1 + (*)\beta_2 + \dots + \beta_s \end{cases} \Rightarrow (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_s) = (\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_s) \begin{pmatrix} 1 & * & \dots & * \\ 0 & 1 & \dots & * \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \dots & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

单位化 $\varepsilon_1 = \frac{\beta_1}{|\beta_1|}, \varepsilon_2 = \frac{\beta_2}{|\beta_2|}, \dots, \varepsilon_s = \frac{\beta_s}{|\beta_s|}$ 或 $\beta_1 = |\beta_1| \varepsilon_1, \beta_2 = |\beta_2| \varepsilon_2, \dots, \beta_s = |\beta_s| \varepsilon_s$

$$\Rightarrow (\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_s) = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_s) \begin{pmatrix} |\beta_1| & & & 0 \\ & |\beta_2| & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ 0 & & & |\beta_s| \end{pmatrix}_{s \times s} \text{ 代入上式}$$

$$\Rightarrow A = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_s) (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_s) \begin{pmatrix} |\beta_1| & & & * \\ & |\beta_2| & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ 0 & & & |\beta_s| \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & & & (*) \\ & 1 & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ 0 & & & 1 \end{pmatrix}_{s \times s}$$

$$\text{令 } R = \begin{pmatrix} |\beta_1| & & & \\ & |\beta_2| & & * \\ & & \ddots & \\ & 0 & & |\beta_s| \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & & & (*) \\ & 1 & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ & 0 & & 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} |\beta_1| & & & (*) \\ & |\beta_2| & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ & 0 & & |\beta_s| \end{pmatrix} \text{上三角}$$

$Q = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_s)_{n \times s}$ 为正交高阵

$$\Rightarrow A = QR = Q_{n \times s} R_{s \times s}$$

特别: $A = A_{n \times n}$ 为可逆方阵, 也有 $A = Q_{n \times n} R_{n \times n}$

注: 若 $Q = Q_{n \times s}$ 为正交高阵, 则 $Q^T Q = I_s$

$$\text{由 } A = QR \Rightarrow R = Q^T A \quad (\because Q^T Q = I)$$

$$\text{Eg. } A = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & 4 \\ 1 & 4 & -2 \\ 1 & 4 & 2 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}_{4 \times 3} \quad (\text{高阵})$$

$$\text{解: } \alpha_1 = (1, 1, 1, 1)^T, \alpha_2 = (-1, 4, 4, -1)^T, \alpha_3 = (4, -2, 2, 0)^T$$

$$\text{令 } \beta_1 = \alpha_1 = (1, 1, 1, 1)^T, |\beta_1|^2 = 4, |\beta_1| = 2$$

$$\beta_2 = \alpha_2 - \frac{(\alpha_2 \bullet \beta_1)}{|\beta_1|^2} \beta_1 = \left(-\frac{5}{2}, \frac{5}{2}, \frac{5}{2}, -\frac{5}{2}\right)^T = \frac{5}{2}(-1, 1, 1, -1)^T, |\beta_2|^2 = 25, |\beta_2| = 5$$

$$\beta_3 = \alpha_3 - \frac{(\alpha_3 \bullet \beta_1)}{|\beta_1|^2} \beta_1 - \frac{(\alpha_3 \bullet \beta_2)}{|\beta_2|^2} \beta_2 = (2, -2, 2, -2)^T, |\beta_3|^2 = 16, |\beta_3| = 4$$

$$\text{单位化: } \varepsilon_1 = \frac{\beta_1}{|\beta_1|} = \frac{1}{2}(1, 1, 1, 1)^T, \varepsilon_2 = \frac{\beta_2}{|\beta_2|} = \frac{1}{2}(-1, 1, 1, -1)^T, \varepsilon_3 = \frac{\beta_3}{|\beta_3|} = \frac{1}{2}(1, -1, 1, -1)^T$$

$$\text{令 } Q = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \varepsilon_3) = \begin{pmatrix} 1/2 & -1/2 & 1/2 \\ 1/2 & 1/2 & -1/2 \\ 1/2 & 1/2 & 1/2 \\ 1/2 & -1/2 & -1/2 \end{pmatrix}_{4 \times 3} \quad (\text{正交高阵})$$

$$\text{令 } R = Q^T A = \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 1 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 3 & 2 \\ 0 & 5 & -2 \\ 0 & 0 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{上三角})$$

$$\Rightarrow A = QR$$

Ex. 求 QR 分解

$$(1) A = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 3 & 1 \\ 0 & 4 & -2 \\ 2 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2) A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}_{4 \times 2}$$

正交阵定义：若方阵 $A = A_{n \times n}$ 的 n 个列 $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ 为单位正交组（基）

性质：设 $A = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n)_{n \times n}$ 为正交阵 ($\alpha_1 \perp \alpha_2 \perp \dots \perp \alpha_n$)

$$(1) A^T A = I_n \text{ 且 } A^{-1} = A^T \text{ 或 } A A^T = I_n$$

$$(2) \text{长度公式: } |Ax|^2 = |x|^2 \quad (x \in R^n) \quad (\because |Ax|^2 = (Ax)^T(Ax) = x^T x)$$

复欧空间（酉空间） C^n

设复 n 元数组空间 $C^n = \{x = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)^T \mid x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n \in C\}$

任取 $x = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)^T, y = (y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n)^T \in C^n$

$$\text{规定：标准内积（点积）如下：} (x, y) = x \bullet y = y^H x = (\bar{y}_1, \bar{y}_2, \dots, \bar{y}_n) \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{pmatrix} = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \bar{y}_i$$

注： y^H 表示复共轭转置也叫 Hermite 转置

复内积性质：

$$(1) (y, x) = \overline{(x, y)} \text{ 或 } y \bullet x = \overline{x \bullet y}$$

$$(2) (kx, y) = k(x, y), \quad (x, ky) = \bar{k}(x, y) \text{ 或 } x \bullet (ky) = \bar{k}(x \bullet y)$$

$$(3) (x, y+z) = (x, y) + (x, z) \text{ 或 } x \bullet (y+z) = x \bullet y + x \bullet z$$

$$(4) \text{正定性: } (x, x) = x^H x \geq 0, \text{ 长度公式: } |x| = \sqrt{(x, x)} = \sqrt{x^H x} = \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^n |x_i|^2}, \quad x \in C^n$$

$$\text{注: } x^H x = \sum_{i=1}^n \bar{x}_i x_i = \sum_{i=1}^n |x_i|^2$$

许互次（Schwarz）不等式： $|(x, y)| \leq |x| \cdot |y|$

正交定义： $x \perp y \Leftrightarrow (x, y) = x \bullet y = 0 \quad \left(\sum_{i=1}^n x_i \bar{y}_i = 0 \right)$

注： $(x, y) = x \bullet y = 0$ 必有 $(y, x) = y \bullet x = 0, \quad \because (y, x) = \overline{(x, y)} = \bar{0} = 0$

引理: $x \perp y \Leftrightarrow (x, y) = 0 \Leftrightarrow (y, x) = 0$

勾股定理: $x \perp y \Rightarrow |(x \pm y)|^2 = |x|^2 + |y|^2$

Pf: $|(x+y)|^2 = (x+y) \cdot (x+y) = x \cdot x + y \cdot y + x \cdot y + y \cdot x = |x|^2 + |y|^2$

次酉阵定义: 若 $A = A_{n \times s}$ 中列 $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_s$ 是单位正交组, 则称 A 为次酉阵

称 $A = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_s)_{n \times s}$ 为次酉阵, $\alpha_1 \perp \alpha_2 \perp \dots \perp \alpha_s$, $|\alpha_1|^2 = |\alpha_2|^2 = \dots = |\alpha_s|^2 = 1$

性质: $A = A_{n \times s}$ 为次酉阵 $\Leftrightarrow \bar{A}^T A = I_s$ 记为 $A^H A = I_s$

注: $A^H = \bar{A}^T = \overline{A^T}$ 表示 Hermite 转置

Pf: $\because \alpha_1 \perp \alpha_2 \perp \dots \perp \alpha_s \Rightarrow \alpha_1^H \alpha_2 = 0, \dots, \alpha_s^H \alpha_{s-1} = 0$

$$\Rightarrow A^H A = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_1^H \\ \alpha_2^H \\ \vdots \\ \alpha_s^H \end{pmatrix} (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_s) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & & & 0 \\ & 1 & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ 0 & & & 1 \end{pmatrix} = I_s$$

特别对方阵 $A = A_{n \times n} = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n)$

若各列互正交且长度为 1, 则称 A 为酉阵

酉阵性质: $A = A_{n \times n}$ 为酉阵 $\Rightarrow A^H A = I_n$ 或 $A^{-1} = A^H$

引理: $A = A_{n \times n}$ 为酉阵 $\Leftrightarrow A^H A = A A^H = I_n \Leftrightarrow A^{-1} = A^H$

注: 用 “ \mathscr{U} ” 表示 “酉”

\mathscr{UR} 分解公式: 每个高阵 $A = A_{n \times s} = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_s)$ ($\text{rank}(A) = \text{列数}$)

都有分解 $A = QR$, $Q = Q_{n \times s}$ 为次酉, R 为上三角 (正交线性)

注: 许 Schmidt 正交公式在 \mathscr{U} 空间 C^n 中也成立

若 $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_s$ 为无关组

$$\text{令} \begin{cases} \beta_1 = \alpha_1 \\ \beta_2 = \alpha_2 - \frac{(\alpha_2 \cdot \beta_1)}{|\beta_1|^2} \beta_1 \\ \vdots \\ \beta_s = \alpha_s - \frac{(\alpha_s \cdot \beta_1)}{|\beta_1|^2} \beta_1 - \frac{(\alpha_s \cdot \beta_2)}{|\beta_2|^2} \beta_2 - \dots - \frac{(\alpha_s \cdot \beta_{s-1})}{|\beta_{s-1}|^2} \beta_{s-1} \end{cases}, \text{ 则 } \beta_1 \perp \beta_2 \perp \dots \perp \beta_s$$

Eg. $A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & i \\ i & 1 \end{pmatrix} = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2)$, 求 QR 分解

$$\alpha_1 = (1, i)^T, \quad \alpha_2 = (i, 1)^T$$

$$\beta_1 = \alpha_1 = (1, i)^T, \quad |\beta_1|^2 = 2, \quad |\beta_1| = \sqrt{2}$$

$$\beta_2 = \alpha_2 - \frac{(\alpha_2 \bullet \beta_1)}{|\beta_1|^2} \beta_1 = \alpha_2 - 0 \bullet \alpha_1 = \alpha_2 = (i, 1)^T$$

$$\beta_1 \perp \beta_2 \quad (\alpha_1 \perp \alpha_2)$$

$$\varepsilon_1 = \frac{\beta_1}{|\beta_1|} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \beta_1, \quad \varepsilon_2 = \frac{\beta_2}{|\beta_2|} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \beta_2$$

$$Q = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2) = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & \frac{i}{\sqrt{2}} \\ i & 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{为 } \mathbb{C}\text{-阵})$$

$$\text{令 } A = QR \Rightarrow R = Q^H A$$

C^n 中标准内积 (点积) (称 C^n 为复欧空间或 \mathbb{C} 空间)

$$x = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)^T, y = (y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n)^T \in C^n$$

$$\text{内积为: } x \bullet y = (x, y) = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \bar{y}_i = (\bar{y}_1, \bar{y}_2, \dots, \bar{y}_n) \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{pmatrix} = y^H x$$

$$\text{特别: } x, y \in R^n \subset C^n, \text{ 有 } x \bullet y = (x, y) = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i y_i$$

$$\text{性质: } (1) y \bullet x = \overline{x \bullet y}; \quad (2) x \bullet (y + z) = x \bullet y + x \bullet z;$$

$$(3) (x, ky) = \bar{k}(x, y); \quad (4) x \bullet x = x^H x = \sum_{i=1}^n |x_i|^2 \quad (\text{长度平方})$$

C^n 中的正交条件 “ $x \perp y$ ”

$$\text{定义: } x \perp y \Leftrightarrow x \bullet y = 0 \text{ 或 } y \bullet x = 0$$

$$\text{勾股定理: } x \perp y \Rightarrow |(x \pm y)|^2 = |x|^2 + |y|^2$$

$$\text{Eg. } \alpha = (1, i, i)^T, \quad \beta = (2, -i, -i)^T, \quad \text{则 } \alpha \perp \beta$$

$$\because \alpha \bullet \beta = \beta^H \alpha = \begin{pmatrix} \overline{2}, \overline{-i}, \overline{-i} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ i \\ i \end{pmatrix} = 2 + i^2 + i^2 = 0$$

$$\text{验证: } |(\alpha + \beta)|^2 = |\alpha|^2 + |\beta|^2$$

次酉阵定义: 若 $A = A_{n \times s}$ 中列 $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_s$ 是单位正交组 ($\alpha_1 \perp \alpha_2 \perp \dots \perp \alpha_s$)

则称 $A = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_s)_{n \times s}$ 为次酉阵

引理: $A = A_{n \times s}$ 为次酉阵 $\Leftrightarrow \bar{A}^T A = I_s$

酉阵定义: 若方阵 $A = A_{n \times n} = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n)$ 的列构成单位正交基, 称 A 为 酉阵

引理: $A = A_{n \times n}$ 为 酉阵 $\Rightarrow A^H A = I_n$ 或 $A^{-1} = A^H$

特别: 实正交阵 ($A \in R^{n \times n}, A^T A = I_n$) 都是 酉阵

$$\text{例: } A = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & i \\ i & 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1/\sqrt{2} & i/\sqrt{2} \\ i/\sqrt{2} & 1/\sqrt{2} \end{pmatrix}, \quad B = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -2/\sqrt{6} & 1/\sqrt{3} \\ 1/\sqrt{2} & i/\sqrt{6} & i/\sqrt{3} \\ i/\sqrt{2} & 1/\sqrt{6} & 1/\sqrt{3} \end{pmatrix} \text{ 为 酉阵}$$

注: Schmidt 正交化公式仍成立

设 $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_s$ 为无关组, 则 $\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_s$ 互相正交

$$\text{其中: } \begin{cases} \beta_1 = \alpha_1 \\ \beta_2 = \alpha_2 - \frac{(\alpha_2 \bullet \beta_1)}{|\beta_1|^2} \beta_1 \\ \vdots \\ \beta_s = \alpha_s - \frac{(\alpha_s \bullet \beta_1)}{|\beta_1|^2} \beta_1 - \frac{(\alpha_s \bullet \beta_2)}{|\beta_2|^2} \beta_2 - \dots - \frac{(\alpha_s \bullet \beta_{s-1})}{|\beta_{s-1}|^2} \beta_{s-1} \end{cases}$$

QR (或 酉R) 分解

(1) 若 $A = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_s)_{n \times s}$ 为高阵 ($\text{rank}(A) = s$)

则 $A = QR$, $Q = Q_{n \times s}$ 为次酉阵 ($Q^H Q = I_s$), R 为上三角阵

(2) 若方阵 $A = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n)_{n \times n}$ 为可逆方阵

则 $A = QR$, $Q = Q_{n \times n}$ 为酉阵 ($Q^H Q = I_n$), R 为上三角阵

方法: 先把 A 中列正交单位化可得 Q , 设 $A = QR$ 解出 $R = Q^H A$

Ex.求 QR 分解

$$(1) A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & i \\ 1 & -i \end{pmatrix} \quad (2) A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & i \\ 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

许尔公式：每个方阵 $A = A_{n \times n}$ 相似于上三角阵

$$\text{即: } P^{-1}AP = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & (*) \\ & \lambda_2 & \\ O & & \ddots \\ & & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix}$$

许尔公式 2：每个方阵 $A = A_{n \times n}$ 都酉相似于上三角阵

$$\text{即存在 酉阵 } Q \text{ 使得 } Q^{-1}AQ = Q^H A Q = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & (*) \\ & \lambda_2 & \\ O & & \ddots \\ & & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{Pf: } \because P^{-1}AP = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & (*) \\ & \lambda_2 & \\ O & & \ddots \\ & & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{用 } QR \text{ 分解 } P = QR \text{ 写 } R = \begin{pmatrix} t_1 & & (*) \\ & t_2 & \\ O & & \ddots \\ & & & t_n \end{pmatrix}, \quad Q^H Q = I_n, \quad Q^{-1} = Q^H$$

$$P^{-1}AP = R^{-1}(Q^{-1}AQ)R = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & (*) \\ & \lambda_2 & \\ O & & \ddots \\ & & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\Rightarrow Q^{-1}AQ = R \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & (*) \\ & \lambda_2 & \\ O & & \ddots \\ & & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix} R^{-1}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} t_1 & & (*) \\ & t_2 & \\ O & & \ddots \\ & & & t_n \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & (*) \\ & \lambda_2 & \\ O & & \ddots \\ & & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} t_1^{-1} & & (*) \\ & t_2^{-1} & \\ O & & \ddots \\ & & & t_n^{-1} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & (*) \\ & \lambda_2 & \\ O & & \ddots \\ & & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix}$$

Hermite 阵定义: 若 $A^H = A$ 称 A 为 Hermite 阵

注: 若 $A^H = A$ 则 A 为方阵

例: $A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1-i \\ 1+i & 2 \end{pmatrix}$, $B = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & i \\ -i & 5 \end{pmatrix}$ 为 Hermite 阵

$$A^H = \begin{pmatrix} \bar{1} & \overline{1-i} \\ \overline{1+i} & \bar{2} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1-i \\ 1+i & 2 \end{pmatrix} = A, \quad B^H = \begin{pmatrix} \bar{3} & \overline{-i} \\ \bar{i} & \bar{5} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & i \\ -i & 5 \end{pmatrix} = B$$

特别: 是对称阵 $A = A^T \in R^{n \times n}$ 也是 Hermite 阵 ($\because A^H = \overline{A}^T = A^T$)

反 Hermite 阵定义: 若 $A^H = -A$

实反对称阵 $A^H = -A \in R^{n \times n}$ 也是反 Hermite 阵

引理: (1) A 为 Hermite 阵 $\Leftrightarrow iA$ 为反 Hermite 阵或 $\frac{A}{i}$ 为反 Hermite 阵

(2) A 为反 Hermite 阵 $\Leftrightarrow iA$ 为 Hermite 阵

Pf: (1) $\because (iA)^H = (\bar{i})A^H = (-i)A = -iA$

例: $A = i \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1-i \\ 1+i & 2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} i & 1+i \\ -1+i & 2i \end{pmatrix}$ 为反 Hermite 阵

注: 反 Hermite 阵对角线为纯虚的 (或 0)

注: $(AB)^H = B^H A^H$, $(A+B)^H = A^H + B^H$

Hermite 阵对角线为实数

Eg. 设 $\varepsilon = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n)^T \in C^n$, $|\varepsilon|^2 = \varepsilon^H \varepsilon = \sum_{j=1}^n |a_j|^2 = 1$ (单位长)

令 $Q = I_n - 2\varepsilon\varepsilon^H$

则 (1) $Q^H = Q$; (2) $Q^H Q = I_n$, 即 Q 为 \mathcal{U} 阵; (3) $Q^{-1} = Q$

解: (1) $Q^H = (I_n - 2\varepsilon\varepsilon^H)^H = (I_n)^H - 2(\varepsilon\varepsilon^H)^H = I_n - 2\varepsilon\varepsilon^H = Q$

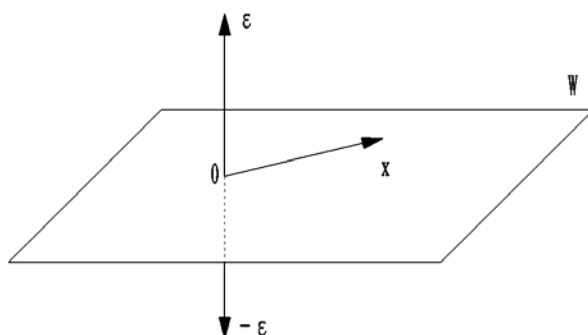
(2) $Q^H Q = Q \cdot Q = (I_n - 2\varepsilon\varepsilon^H)^2 = I_n + 4(\varepsilon\varepsilon^H)(\varepsilon\varepsilon^H) - 4\varepsilon\varepsilon^H = I_n$, Q 为 \mathcal{U} 阵

称这种 \mathcal{U} 阵 Q 为镜面阵 (或 Householder 阵)

镜面阵性质: 设 $Q = I_n - 2\varepsilon\varepsilon^H$, $|\varepsilon|^2 = \varepsilon^H \varepsilon = 1$

\triangle (在空间 R^n 中 $\varepsilon^H = \varepsilon^T$; $Q = I_n - 2\varepsilon\varepsilon^H$)

如图: 以 ε 为法向做一个“平面”(正交补空间) W



(1) $Q\varepsilon = -\varepsilon$, ε 是属于 -1 的特征向量

(2) 若 $x \perp \varepsilon$, 则 $Qx = x$, 属于 1 的特征向量

Pf: (1) $Q\varepsilon = (I_n - 2\varepsilon\varepsilon^T)\varepsilon = \varepsilon - 2\varepsilon\varepsilon^T\varepsilon = \varepsilon - 2\varepsilon = -\varepsilon$

(2) 若 $x \perp \varepsilon \Rightarrow \varepsilon^T x = 0$, $Qx = (I_n - 2\varepsilon\varepsilon^T)x = x - 2\varepsilon(\varepsilon^T x) = x$

(3) Q 恰有 n 个特征向量: $\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_{n-1}$ (无关)

其中 $\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_{n-1}$ 为 $W = \varepsilon^\perp$ 中的基, 属于 1 的特征向量

令 $P = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_{n-1})$ 为可逆

$$\Rightarrow P^{-1}QP = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & & \\ & 1 & \\ & & \ddots \\ & & & 1 \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow Q \text{ 有 } n \text{ 个特征值为 } \{-1, 1, \dots, 1\} \text{ (} n-1 \text{ 重)}$$

$$\Rightarrow |Q| = |I_n - 2\varepsilon\varepsilon^H| = (-1) \cdot 1 \cdot \dots \cdot 1 = -1$$

注: 若 $A = A_{n \times n}$ 为 \mathcal{Z} 阵 (或正交阵), 则有:

(1) 保长度: $|Ax|^2 = |x|^2$

(2) 保内积: $(Ax, Ay) = (x, y)$

Pf: (1) $|Ax|^2 = (Ax)^H(Ax) = y^H(A^H A)x = x^H x = |x|^2$

(2) $(Ax, Ay) = (Ay)^H(Ax) = y^H(A^H A)x = y^H x = (x, y)$

推论: 若 $x \perp y$, 则 $Ax \perp Ay$, A 为 \mathcal{Z} 阵

正规阵条件: $A^H A = A A^H$

注: 正规阵必为方阵

可知: Hermite 阵; 反 Hermite 阵; \mathcal{Z} 阵 (正交阵) 都是正规的

例: $A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$, $A^H A = A A^H$, A 为正规的

引理： 上三角正规阵一定是对角阵

$$\text{Pf: 设 } A = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ & & \ddots & \vdots \\ O & & & a_{nn} \end{pmatrix}, \quad A^H = \begin{pmatrix} \overline{a_{11}} & \overline{a_{12}} & \cdots & O \\ \overline{a_{12}} & \overline{a_{22}} & \cdots & \vdots \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \overline{a_{1n}} & \overline{a_{2n}} & \cdots & \overline{a_{nn}} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{由条件: } AA^H = A^H A \Rightarrow \sum_{i=1}^n |a_{1i}|^2 = |a_{11}|^2 \Rightarrow \sum_{i=2}^n |a_{1i}|^2 = 0$$

$$\text{同理: } a_{23} = a_{24} = \dots = a_{2n} = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow A = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & & & O \\ & a_{22} & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ O & & & a_{nn} \end{pmatrix}$$

推论： 若 A 为上三角正交阵，则 A 为对角阵。

正规阵理论 ($A^H A = A A^H$)

引理： (1) 每个上三角正规阵一定是对角阵

(2) 正规阵经过 \mathcal{Q} 变换仍是正规阵: A 为正规阵, 且 Q 为 \mathcal{Q} 阵 $\Rightarrow Q^H A Q$ 为正规阵

$$\text{Pf: } \because A^H A = A A^H \Rightarrow Q^H A^H A Q = Q^H A A^H Q \Rightarrow (Q^H A^H Q)(Q^H A Q) = (Q^H A Q)(Q^H A^H Q)$$

正规分解： $A = A_{n \times n}$ 为正规阵, 则有阵 Q ($Q^H Q = I_n$, $Q^{-1} = Q^H$)

$$\text{使得 } Q^H A Q = Q^{-1} A Q = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & & O \\ & \lambda_2 & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ O & & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{Pf: 用许尔 (第 2 公式) } \Rightarrow \text{存在 } \mathcal{Q} \text{ 阵 } Q \text{ 使得 } Q^H A Q = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & (*) \\ & \lambda_2 & \ddots \\ O & & \ddots & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{上三角})$$

$$\text{且 } Q^H A Q \text{ 也正规, 由引理 } Q^H A Q \text{ 为对角阵 } Q^H A Q = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & & O \\ & \lambda_2 & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ O & & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix}$$

正规阵结论

写 $Q = (q_1, q_2, \dots, q_n)$ (q_1, q_2, \dots, q_n 互正交)

$$Q^{-1}AQ = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & O \\ & \lambda_2 & \\ O & & \ddots \\ & & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix} \Leftrightarrow AQ = Q \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & O \\ & \lambda_2 & \\ O & & \ddots \\ & & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\Leftrightarrow A(q_1, q_2, \dots, q_n) = (q_1, q_2, \dots, q_n) \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & O \\ & \lambda_2 & \\ O & & \ddots \\ & & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix}$$

$$(AQ_1, AQ_2, \dots, AQ_n) = (\lambda_1 q_1, \lambda_2 q_2, \dots, \lambda_n q_n)$$

$$AQ_1 = \lambda_1 q_1, AQ_2 = \lambda_2 q_2, \dots, AQ_n = \lambda_n q_n$$

(1) 正规阵 $A = A_{n \times n}$ 有 n 个互相正交的特征向量 q_1, q_2, \dots, q_n

注: $x \perp y$ (正交) $\Leftrightarrow y^H x = 0$ 或 $x^H y = 0$

$$q_1 \perp q_2 \perp \dots \perp q_n \Leftrightarrow q_k^H q_l = 0 \quad (k \neq l)$$

$$Q = (q_1, q_2, \dots, q_n), \quad Q^H = \begin{pmatrix} q_1^H \\ q_2^H \\ \vdots \\ q_n^H \end{pmatrix}, \quad (QQ^H = Q^H Q = I_n)$$

$$\Rightarrow QQ^H = (q_1, q_2, \dots, q_n) \begin{pmatrix} q_1^H \\ q_2^H \\ \vdots \\ q_n^H \end{pmatrix} = \sum_{i=1}^n q_i q_i^H = I_n$$

令 $Q_1 = q_1 q_1^H, Q_2 = q_2 q_2^H, \dots, Q_n = q_n q_n^H$ 都是 Hermite 阵

$$Q_1^H = Q_1, Q_2^H = Q_2, \dots, Q_n^H = Q_n; \quad \text{且 } Q_1^2 = Q_1, Q_2^2 = Q_2, \dots, Q_n^2 = Q_n$$

$$Q_1^2 = Q_1 Q_1 = (q_1 q_1^H)(q_1 q_1^H) = q_1 (q_1^H q_1) q_1^H = q_1 q_1^H = Q_1$$

(2) $A = A_{n \times n}$ 为正规阵, 则有分解公式: $A = \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i Q_i$ (谱分解)

$$\text{且 } Q_1^2 = Q_1 = Q_1^H, Q_2^2 = Q_2 = Q_2^H, \dots, Q_n^2 = Q_n = Q_n^H, \quad Q_1 + Q_2 + \dots + Q_n = I_n$$

$$\text{Pf: } \because A = Q \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & & O \\ & \lambda_2 & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ O & & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix} Q^H = (q_1, q_2, \dots, q_n) \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & & O \\ & \lambda_2 & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ O & & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} q_1^H \\ q_2^H \\ \vdots \\ q_n^H \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\Rightarrow A = \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i (q_i q_i^H) = \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i Q_i$$

注: 分解中的 Q_1, Q_2, \dots, Q_n 叫投影阵

性质: (1) $Q_1 + Q_2 + \dots + Q_n = I_n$

$$(2) \quad Q_1^2 = Q_1 = Q_1^H, Q_2^2 = Q_2 = Q_2^H, \dots, Q_n^2 = Q_n = Q_n^H$$

$$(3) \quad Q_1 Q_2 = 0, \dots, Q_k Q_l = 0 \quad (k \neq l)$$

$$\because Q_1 Q_2 = (q_1 q_1^H)(q_2 q_2^H) = q_1 (q_1^H q_2) q_2^H = 0, \quad (q_1 \perp q_2)$$

$$(4) \quad A Q_1 = \lambda_1 Q_1, A Q_2 = \lambda_2 Q_2, \dots, A Q_n = \lambda_n Q_n$$

$$(5) \quad A^k = \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i^k Q_i$$

$$(6) \quad f(A) = \sum_{i=1}^n f(\lambda_i) Q_i, \quad (f(x) \text{ 为多项式})$$

$$\text{Pf: } \because A = \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i Q_i$$

$$\Rightarrow A Q_1 = \left(\sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i Q_i \right) Q_1 = \lambda_1 Q_1^2 + \lambda_2 Q_2 Q_1 + \dots + \lambda_n Q_n Q_1 = \lambda_1 Q_1^2 + 0 + \dots + 0$$

$$A Q_1 = \lambda_1 Q_1^2 = \lambda_1 Q_1, \quad \text{同理 } A Q_2 = \lambda_2 Q_2$$

$$\text{Pf: } (5) \quad \text{若 } A^k = \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i^k Q_i \quad (\text{归纳法})$$

$$\Rightarrow A^{k+1} = A \bullet A^k = A \left(\sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i^k Q_i \right) = \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i^k (A Q_i) = \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i^{k+1} Q_i$$

$$\text{Pf: } (6) \quad \text{写 } f(x) = a_0 + a_1 x + \dots + a_m x^m$$

$$f(A) = a_0 I_n + a_1 A + \dots + a_m A^m = a_0 \left(\sum_{i=1}^n Q_i \right) + a_1 \left(\sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i Q_i \right) + \dots + a_m \left(\sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i^m Q_i \right)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= (a_0 + a_1\lambda_1 + \cdots + a_m\lambda_1^m)Q_1 + (a_0 + a_1\lambda_2 + \cdots + a_m\lambda_2^m)Q_2 + \cdots + (a_0 + a_1\lambda_n + \cdots + a_m\lambda_n^m)Q_n \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^n f(\lambda_i)Q_i
\end{aligned}$$

注： $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n$ 有重根时，可合并部分 Q_1, Q_2, \dots, Q_n

例如： $\lambda_1 = \lambda_2$ 时： $\lambda_1 Q_1 + \lambda_2 Q_2 = \lambda_1 (Q_1 + Q_2)$

写 $G_1 = Q_1 + Q_2$ ，且 $G_1^H = G_1 = G_1^2 = (Q_1 + Q_2)^2 = Q_1 + Q_2$

正规谱分解公式： 设 A 为正规阵， $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_s$ 为互异特征值，则存在 G_1, G_2, \dots, G_s 使得

$$(1) \quad A = \sum_{i=1}^s \lambda_i G_i \quad (\text{注： } G_1, G_2, \dots, G_s \text{ 由 } Q_1, Q_2, \dots, Q_n \text{ 合并})$$

$$(2) \quad G_1 + G_2 + \dots + G_s = I_n$$

$$(3) \quad G_1^2 = G_1 = G_1^H, G_2^2 = G_2 = G_2^H, \dots, G_s^2 = G_s = G_s^H$$

$$(4) \quad G_1 G_2 = 0, \dots, G_k G_l = 0, \quad (k \neq l)$$

$$(5) \quad A G_1 = \lambda_1 G_1, A G_2 = \lambda_2 G_2, \dots, A G_s = \lambda_s G_s$$

$$(6) \quad A^k = \sum_{i=1}^s \lambda_i^k G_i$$

$$(7) \quad f(A) = \sum_{i=1}^s f(\lambda_i) G_i$$

$$k=0 \text{ 时, } A^0 = I_n = G_1 + G_2 + \dots + G_s$$

$$k=1 \text{ 时, } A^1 = \sum_{i=1}^s \lambda_i G_i, \quad (G_1 G_2 = 0, \dots, G_s G_{s-1} = 0)$$

注： 其中 G_1, G_2, \dots, G_s 叫 A 的投影阵

$$\text{引入 } g(x) = \prod_{i=1}^s (x - \lambda_i), \quad (\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_s \text{ 互异})$$

$$g_1(x) = (x - \lambda_1)(x - \lambda_2) \cdots (x - \lambda_s) \quad (\text{去掉}(x - \lambda_1))$$

$$g_2(x) = (x - \lambda_1)(x - \lambda_2) \cdots (x - \lambda_s) \quad (\text{去掉}(x - \lambda_2))$$

$$\vdots$$

$$g_s(x) = (x - \lambda_1)(x - \lambda_2) \cdots (x - \lambda_s) \quad (\text{去掉}(x - \lambda_s))$$

则 $g_1(\lambda_1) \neq 0, g_2(\lambda_2) \neq 0, \dots, g_s(\lambda_s) \neq 0$

$$\text{令 } G_1 = \varphi_1(A) = \frac{g_1(A)}{g_1(\lambda_1)}, G_2 = \varphi_2(A) = \frac{g_2(A)}{g_2(\lambda_2)}, \dots, G_s = \varphi_s(A) = \frac{g_s(A)}{g_s(\lambda_s)}$$

$$\text{则 } A = \sum_{i=1}^s \lambda_i G_i; \quad A^k = \sum_{i=1}^s \lambda_i^k G_i$$

Pf: 由公式 $f(A) = \sum_{i=1}^s f(\lambda_i) G_i$, ($f(x)$ 为任取)

$$\text{取 } f(x) = g_1(x) \Rightarrow g_1(A) = \sum_{i=1}^s g_1(\lambda_i) G_i \Rightarrow g_1(A) = g_1(\lambda_1) G_1 \Rightarrow G_1 = \frac{g_1(A)}{g_1(\lambda_1)} = \varphi_1(A)$$

$$\text{同理: 取 } f(x) = g_2(x) \Rightarrow G_2 = \frac{g_2(A)}{g_2(\lambda_2)} = \varphi_2(A)$$

$$\text{取 } f(x) = g_s(x) \Rightarrow G_s = \frac{g_s(A)}{g_s(\lambda_s)} = \varphi_s(A)$$

$$\text{Eg. } A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1-i \\ 1+i & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad (i = \sqrt{-1}, i^2 = -1), \quad A^H = A \quad (\text{正规})$$

$$\text{解: } |xI - A| = (x-3)x, \quad \sigma(A) = \{3, 0\}, \quad \lambda_1 = 3, \quad \lambda_2 = 0$$

$$\lambda_1 = 3: \text{特征向量 } q_1 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \begin{pmatrix} 1-i \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}; \quad \lambda_2 = 0: \text{特征向量 } q_2 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 1+i \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{令 } Q = (q_1, q_2) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \begin{pmatrix} 1-i & -1 \\ 1 & 1+i \end{pmatrix}, \quad Q \text{ 为 } \mathbb{C} \text{ 阵 } (Q^H Q = I)$$

$$\Rightarrow Q^H A Q = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}(1+i) & \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \\ -\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} & \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}(1-i) \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1-i \\ 1+i & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}(1-i) & -\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} & \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}(1+i) \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\Rightarrow A = \lambda_1 q_1 q_1^H + \lambda_2 q_2 q_2^H = 3 \cdot G_1 + 0 \cdot G_2$$

$$\text{方法 2: 用投影阵公式: } g(x) = (x - \lambda_1)(x - \lambda_2) = (x - 3)(x - 0)$$

$$g_1(x) = (x - \hat{\lambda}_1)(x - \lambda_2) = x, \quad g_2(x) = (x - \lambda_1)(x - \hat{\lambda}_2) = (x - 3)$$

$$G_1 = \frac{g_1(A)}{g_1(\lambda_1)} = \frac{A}{3}, \quad G_2 = \frac{g_2(A)}{g_2(\lambda_2)} = \frac{A - 3I}{0 - 3}$$

$$A = \lambda_1 G_1 + \lambda_2 G_2 = \lambda_1 \left(\frac{A}{3} \right) + \lambda_2 \left(\frac{A - 3I}{-3} \right) \Rightarrow A^{100} = 3^{100} \left(\frac{A}{3} \right) + 0^{100} \left(\frac{A - 3I}{-3} \right)$$

Ex. 判定下列矩阵为正规，并写出谱分解公式 ($f(A) = ?$)

$$(1) A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2) A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1-i \\ 1+i & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (3) A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -i \\ i & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$(4) A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -i & 0 \\ i & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5) A = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (6) A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

《矩阵分析》P179-180: 2 5 (2) (4) 3 (1) 8 (仿例 3.6.5)

Eg. 证明: 若 $A^H = A$ (Hermite), 则 A 的特征值全为实数

Pf: $\because A^H = A$ 为正规阵

$$\Rightarrow Q^H A Q = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & 0 \\ & \lambda_2 & \\ 0 & & \ddots \\ & & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix}, \quad (Q \text{ 为 } \mathscr{U} \text{ 阵})$$

$$(Q^H A Q)^H = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & 0 \\ & \lambda_2 & \\ 0 & & \ddots \\ & & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix}^H = \begin{pmatrix} \overline{\lambda_1} & & 0 \\ & \overline{\lambda_2} & \\ 0 & & \ddots \\ & & & \overline{\lambda_n} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{左边: } Q^H A^H Q = Q^H A Q = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & 0 \\ & \lambda_2 & \\ 0 & & \ddots \\ & & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow \overline{\lambda_1} = \lambda_1, \overline{\lambda_2} = \lambda_2, \dots, \overline{\lambda_n} = \lambda_n$$

$\therefore \lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n$ 为实数

Ex. 斜 Hermite 阵 $A = -A^H$ 的特征值全为纯虚或 0 (可用 iA 为 Hermite 阵)

正规阵应用 (正规条件 $A^H A = A A^H$)

注: 实对称阵: Hermite 阵、正交阵、 \mathscr{U} 阵都为正规阵

正规分解: A 正规 $\Leftrightarrow Q^H A Q = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & & O \\ & \lambda_2 & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ O & & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix}$, (Q 为某 \mathbb{C} 阵)

正规谱分解: A 正规 $\Leftrightarrow A = \lambda_1 G_1 + \lambda_2 G_2 + \cdots + \lambda_s G_s$; ($\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_s$ 互异)

$$A^k = \lambda_1^k G_1 + \lambda_2^k G_2 + \cdots + \lambda_s^k G_s$$

$$f(A) = f(\lambda_1)G_1 + f(\lambda_2)G_2 + \cdots + f(\lambda_s)G_s; \quad (f(x) \text{ 为任意多项式})$$

其中: G_1, G_2, \dots, G_s 叫 A 的投影阵

注: (1) $G_1 + G_2 + \cdots + G_s = I_n$

(2) $G_1^2 = G_1 = G_1^H, G_2^2 = G_2 = G_2^H, \dots, G_s^2 = G_s = G_s^H$

(3) $G_i G_j = 0; \quad (i \neq j)$

特别有投影公式如下: $G_1 = \frac{g_1(A)}{g_1(\lambda_1)}, G_2 = \frac{g_2(A)}{g_2(\lambda_2)}, \dots, G_s = \frac{g_s(A)}{g_s(\lambda_s)}$

$$\begin{aligned} g_1(x) &= (x - \hat{\lambda}_1)(x - \lambda_2) \cdots (x - \lambda_s) \\ \text{其中: } g_2(x) &= (x - \lambda_1)(x - \hat{\lambda}_2) \cdots (x - \lambda_s) \\ &\vdots \\ g_s(x) &= (x - \lambda_1)(x - \lambda_2) \cdots (x - \hat{\lambda}_s) \end{aligned}$$

eg. 任取 $A = A_{m \times n} \in C^{m \times n}$ 则 $A^H A$ 、 $A A^H$ 都为 Hermite (正规)

pf: $(A^H A)^H = A^H (A^H)^H = A^H A \Rightarrow A^H A$ 为 Hermite

引理: (1) $y^H y = |y_1|^2 + |y_2|^2 + \cdots + |y_n|^2 \geq 0; \quad y = (y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n)^T \in C^n$

(2) $y^H y = 0 \Leftrightarrow y = 0$

由于 $x^H (A^H A) x = (Ax)^H (Ax) \geq 0$ (引理), 令 $y = Ax$

\Rightarrow 2 次型 $x^H (A^H A) x$ 为半正定 $\Rightarrow A^H A$ 的特征值非负。

可设 $Q^H (A^H A) Q = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & & O \\ & \lambda_2 & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ O & & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix}$, (Q 为 \mathbb{C} 阵)

$$x^H Q^H (A^H A) x Q = (Qx)^H (A^H A) (Qx) = x^H \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & O \\ & \lambda_2 & \ddots \\ O & & \ddots & \ddots \\ & & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix} x$$

$$= \lambda_1 |x_1|^2 + \lambda_2 |x_2|^2 + \cdots + \lambda_n |x_n|^2 \geq 0 \Rightarrow \lambda_1 \geq 0, \lambda_2 \geq 0, \dots, \lambda_n \geq 0$$

定义： 设 $A^H A$ 的特征值为 $\lambda_1 \geq 0, \lambda_2 \geq 0, \dots, \lambda_n \geq 0$ ，称 $\sqrt{\lambda_1}, \sqrt{\lambda_2}, \dots, \sqrt{\lambda_n}$ 为 A 的奇异值

eg. 任一非负定（或正定）Hermite 阵 A 存在平方根 B

使得 $B^2 = A$ （可写 $B = A^{1/2}$ ）且 B 为非负定（正定）

Pf: 证法 1: $\because Q^H A Q = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & O \\ & \lambda_2 & \ddots \\ O & & \ddots & \ddots \\ & & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix}, \lambda_1 \geq 0, \lambda_2 \geq 0, \dots, \lambda_n \geq 0$

$$\Rightarrow A Q = Q \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{\lambda_1} & & O \\ & \sqrt{\lambda_2} & \ddots \\ O & & \ddots & \ddots \\ & & & \sqrt{\lambda_n} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{\lambda_1} & & O \\ & \sqrt{\lambda_2} & \ddots \\ O & & \ddots & \ddots \\ & & & \sqrt{\lambda_n} \end{pmatrix} Q^H$$

$$= Q \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{\lambda_1} & & O \\ & \sqrt{\lambda_2} & \ddots \\ O & & \ddots & \ddots \\ & & & \sqrt{\lambda_n} \end{pmatrix} Q^H Q \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{\lambda_1} & & O \\ & \sqrt{\lambda_2} & \ddots \\ O & & \ddots & \ddots \\ & & & \sqrt{\lambda_n} \end{pmatrix} Q^H$$

$$\text{令 } B = Q \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{\lambda_1} & & O \\ & \sqrt{\lambda_2} & \ddots \\ O & & \ddots & \ddots \\ & & & \sqrt{\lambda_n} \end{pmatrix} Q^H \text{ 且 } B \text{ 为 Hermite 非负定}$$

$$\Rightarrow A = B^2 \text{ 或 } B = A^{1/2}$$

证法 2: $\because A = \lambda_1 G_1 + \lambda_2 G_2 + \dots + \lambda_s G_s; (\lambda_1 \geq 0, \lambda_2 \geq 0, \dots, \lambda_s \geq 0 \text{ 互异})$

$$\text{令 } B = \sqrt{\lambda_1} G_1 + \sqrt{\lambda_2} G_2 + \dots + \sqrt{\lambda_s} G_s$$

$$\Rightarrow B = (\sqrt{\lambda_1})^2 G_1^2 + (\sqrt{\lambda_2})^2 G_2^2 + \dots + (\sqrt{\lambda_s})^2 G_s^2 = \lambda_1 G_1 + \lambda_2 G_2 + \dots + \lambda_s G_s = A$$

$\because G_1, G_2, \dots, G_s$ 为 A 的多项式 $\Rightarrow B = \sqrt{\lambda_1} G_1 + \sqrt{\lambda_2} G_2 + \dots + \sqrt{\lambda_s} G_s$ 为 A 的多项式

可对角化矩阵的谱分解

注： 方阵 $A = A_{n \times n}$ 可对角化条件： A 相似于对角阵

引理： A 相似于对角阵 $\Leftrightarrow A$ 有 n 个无关的特征向量 $\Leftrightarrow A$ 的极小式无重根

谱分解公式： 设 A 可对角化（极小式无重根）

令 A 的全体互异特征值为 $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_s$

$$\text{令 } G_1 = \frac{g_1(A)}{g_1(\lambda_1)}, G_2 = \frac{g_2(A)}{g_2(\lambda_2)}, \dots, G_s = \frac{g_s(A)}{g_s(\lambda_s)}$$

$$\text{其中 } \begin{cases} g_1(x) = (x - \lambda_1)(x - \lambda_2) \cdots (x - \lambda_s) \\ g_2(x) = (x - \lambda_1)(x - \lambda_2) \cdots (x - \lambda_s); \quad g_1(\lambda_1) \neq 0, g_2(\lambda_2) \neq 0, \dots, g_s(\lambda_s) \neq 0 \\ \vdots \\ g_s(x) = (x - \lambda_1)(x - \lambda_2) \cdots (x - \lambda_s) \end{cases}$$

则 $A = \lambda_1 G_1 + \lambda_2 G_2 + \dots + \lambda_s G_s$

$$A^k = \lambda_1^k G_1 + \lambda_2^k G_2 + \dots + \lambda_s^k G_s$$

$$f(A) = f(\lambda_1)G_1 + f(\lambda_2)G_2 + \dots + f(\lambda_s)G_s; \quad (f(x) \text{ 为任意多项式})$$

其中 G_1, G_2, \dots, G_s 叫投影阵

性质： (1) $G_1 + G_2 + \dots + G_s = I_n$

$$(2) \quad G_1^2 = G_1, G_2^2 = G_2, \dots, G_s^2 = G_s$$

$$(3) \quad G_i G_j = 0; \quad (i \neq j)$$

$$(4) \quad A G_1 = \lambda_1 G_1, A G_2 = \lambda_2 G_2, \dots, A G_s = \lambda_s G_s$$

$$\text{eg. } A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix}, \text{ 求谱分解}$$

解： A 有 3 个互异特征值 1、2、3（可对角化）

$$g_1(x) = (x - 1)(x - 2)(x - 3) = (x - 2)(x - 3)$$

$$\text{令 } g_2(x) = (x - 1)(x - 2)(x - 3) = (x - 1)(x - 3)$$

$$g_3(x) = (x - 1)(x - 2)(x - 3) = (x - 1)(x - 2)$$

$$\text{令} \begin{cases} G_1 = \frac{g_1(A)}{g_1(\lambda_1)} = \frac{(A-2I)(A-3I)}{(1-2)(1-3)} \\ G_2 = \frac{g_2(A)}{g_2(\lambda_2)} = \frac{(A-I)(A-3I)}{(2-1)(2-3)} \\ G_3 = \frac{g_3(A)}{g_3(\lambda_3)} = \frac{(A-I)(A-2I)}{(3-1)(3-2)} \end{cases} \Rightarrow A = 1 \cdot G_1 + 2 \cdot G_2 + 3 \cdot G_3$$

谱分解习题:

$$1. A = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i & 1 \\ i & 0 & i \\ 1 & -i & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \text{求谱分解 } (i^2 = -1)$$

2. 若 A 正规, 且 $A = \lambda_1 G_1 + \lambda_2 G_2 + \dots + \lambda_s G_s$ 为其谱分解, 则 A^H 的谱分解为 $A^H = \overline{\lambda_1} G_1 + \overline{\lambda_2} G_2 + \dots + \overline{\lambda_s} G_s$

3. 若 A 有谱分解: $A = \lambda_1 G_1 + \lambda_2 G_2 + \dots + \lambda_s G_s$ 则 A^T 有谱分解 $A^T = \lambda_1 G_1^T + \lambda_2 G_2^T + \dots + \lambda_s G_s^T$

另有, 《矩阵分析》P212, 3、4

条件: A 可对角化 (极小式 $g_1(x) = (x - \lambda_1)(x - \lambda_2) \dots (x - \lambda_s)$ 无重根)

则 $A = \lambda_1 G_1 + \lambda_2 G_2 + \dots + \lambda_s G_s$, 且 $f(A) = f(\lambda_1)G_1 + f(\lambda_2)G_2 + \dots + f(\lambda_s)G_s$, ($f(x)$ 为任意多项式)

$$\text{其中 } G_1 = \frac{g_1(A)}{g_1(\lambda_1)}, G_2 = \frac{g_2(A)}{g_2(\lambda_2)}, \dots, G_s = \frac{g_s(A)}{g_s(\lambda_s)}$$

$$(1) G_1 + G_2 + \dots + G_s = I_n$$

$$(2) G_1^2 = G_1, G_2^2 = G_2, \dots, G_s^2 = G_s$$

$$(3) G_i G_j = 0; (i \neq j)$$

$$(4) A G_1 = \lambda_1 G_1, A G_2 = \lambda_2 G_2, \dots, A G_s = \lambda_s G_s$$

$$\text{Pf: } 1: A = P \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & & O \\ & \lambda_2 & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ O & & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix} P^{-1}, \text{ 令 } P = (p_1, p_2, \dots, p_n), P^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} q_1 \\ q_2 \\ \vdots \\ q_n \end{pmatrix} \text{ (按行)}$$

$$\Rightarrow A = (p_1, p_2, \dots, p_n) \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & & O \\ & \lambda_2 & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ O & & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} q_1 \\ q_2 \\ \vdots \\ q_n \end{pmatrix} = \lambda_1(p_1 q_1) + \lambda_2(p_2 q_2) + \dots + \lambda_s(p_s q_s)$$

$$\text{注: } I = P^{-1}P = \begin{pmatrix} q_1 \\ q_2 \\ \vdots \\ q_n \end{pmatrix} (p_1, p_2, \dots, p_n) = \begin{pmatrix} q_1 p_1 & & * \\ & q_2 p_2 & \\ & * & \ddots \\ & & & q_n p_n \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow \begin{matrix} q_1 p_1 = \dots = q_n p_n = 1 \\ \text{其它 } q_i p_j = 0 (i \neq j) \end{matrix}$$

$$\Rightarrow \text{令 } P_1 = p_1 q_1, P_2 = p_2 q_2, \dots, P_n = p_n q_n,$$

$$\text{则 } A = \lambda_1 P_1 + \lambda_2 P_2 + \dots + \lambda_n P_n$$

$$\text{且 } P_1^2 = (p_1 q_1)(p_1 q_1) = p_1(q_1 p_1)q_1 = p_1 q_1 = P_1, \text{ 同理 } P_2^2 = P_2, \dots, P_n^2 = P_n$$

$$P_1 P_2 = (p_1 q_1)(p_2 q_2) = p_1(q_1 p_2)q_2 = 0, \text{ 同理 } P_i P_j = 0 (i \neq j)$$

$$P_1 + P_2 + \dots + P_n = p_1 q_1 + p_2 q_2 + \dots + p_n q_n = (p_1, p_2, \dots, p_n) \begin{pmatrix} q_1 \\ q_2 \\ \vdots \\ q_n \end{pmatrix} = PP^{-1} = I_n$$

$$\text{注: 若 } \lambda_1 = \lambda_2 \text{ (重根)} \quad \lambda_1 P_1 + \lambda_2 P_2 = \lambda_1 (P_1 + P_2) \text{ 记为 } \lambda_1 G_1$$

$$\text{且 } G_1 = (P_1 + P_2), \quad G_1^2 = (P_1 + P_2)^2 = P_1^2 + P_2^2 = P_1 + P_2 = G_1$$

$$\text{合并重根} \Rightarrow A = \lambda_1 G_1 + \lambda_2 G_2 + \dots + \lambda_s G_s \quad (\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_s \text{ 互异})$$

Pf: 2: 若 A 的极小式 $g_1(x) = (x - \lambda_1)(x - \lambda_2) \dots (x - \lambda_s)$ 无重根

$$\text{令 } \begin{cases} g_1(x) = (x - \lambda_1)(x - \lambda_2) \dots (x - \lambda_s) \\ g_2(x) = (x - \lambda_1)(x - \lambda_2) \dots (x - \lambda_s) \\ \vdots \\ g_s(x) = (x - \lambda_1)(x - \lambda_2) \dots (x - \lambda_s) \end{cases}$$

$$\text{令 } \tilde{g}_1 = \frac{g_1(x)}{g_1(\lambda_1)}, \tilde{g}_2 = \frac{g_2(x)}{g_2(\lambda_2)}, \dots, \tilde{g}_s = \frac{g_s(x)}{g_s(\lambda_s)}$$

$$\text{则有 0 点公式: } \tilde{g}_1 + \tilde{g}_2 + \dots + \tilde{g}_s = 1; \quad \lambda_1 \tilde{g}_1 + \lambda_2 \tilde{g}_2 + \dots + \lambda_s \tilde{g}_s = x$$

$$\text{取 } x = A \Rightarrow \begin{cases} \tilde{g}_1(A) + \tilde{g}_2(A) + \dots + \tilde{g}_s(A) = I \\ \lambda_1 \tilde{g}_1(A) + \lambda_2 \tilde{g}_2(A) + \dots + \lambda_s \tilde{g}_s(A) = A \end{cases}$$

$$\text{令 } G_1 = \tilde{g}_1(A) = \frac{g_1(A)}{g_1(\lambda_1)}, G_2 = \tilde{g}_2(A) = \frac{g_2(A)}{g_2(\lambda_2)}, \dots, G_s = \tilde{g}_s(A) = \frac{g_s(A)}{g_s(\lambda_s)}$$

$$\text{则有 } G_1 + G_2 + \dots + G_s = I_n; \quad A = \lambda_1 G_1 + \lambda_2 G_2 + \dots + \lambda_s G_s$$

$$\because g_1(x) g_2(x) = (x - \lambda_1)(x - \lambda_2) \dots (x - \lambda_s) \dots = g(x) \dots$$

$$\Rightarrow g_1(A) g_2(A) = g(A) \dots = 0 \dots = 0$$

$$\text{同理 } g_i(A) g_j(A) = 0 \quad (i \neq j) \Rightarrow G_i G_j = \frac{g_i(A) g_j(A)}{g_i(\lambda_i) g_j(\lambda_j)} = 0$$

$$\text{又 } I = G_1 + G_2 + \dots + G_s$$

$$\Rightarrow G_1 = G_1 I = G_1 (G_1 + G_2 + \dots + G_s) = G_1^2 + G_1 G_2 + \dots + G_1 G_s = G_1^2$$

$$\Rightarrow G_1^2 = G_1, G_2^2 = G_2, \dots, G_s^2 = G_s$$

注: (1) 极小式无重根 $\Leftrightarrow A$ 可对角化

(2) 某 0 化式无重根 $\Rightarrow A$ 可对角化

$$\text{eg. } A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 3 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \text{ 求极小式与谱分解}$$

解: $|\lambda I - A|$ 各列相加 $(x-5)(x-1)^2$, 极小式为 $(x-5)(x-1)$ 或 $(x-5)(x-1)^2$

$$\text{计算 } (A - 5I)(A - I) = 0 \Rightarrow \text{极小式 } g(x) = (x-5)(x-1)$$

$$\text{令 } g_1(x) = (x-5), \quad g_2(x) = (x-1)$$

$$\Rightarrow A = 1 \cdot \left(\frac{g_1(A)}{1-5} \right) + 5 \cdot \left(\frac{g_2(A)}{5-1} \right)$$

$$\text{Ex. 令 } B = A^T = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 3 & 2 \\ 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \text{ 求 } B \text{ 的极小式与谱分解}$$

换位公式: 令 $A = A_{m \times n}, \quad B = B_{n \times m}$

$$\text{则 } |xI_m - AB| = x^{m-n} |xI_n - BA|$$

$$\text{Pf: 令 } P = \begin{pmatrix} I_m & A \\ 0 & I_n \end{pmatrix}, \quad Q = \begin{pmatrix} AB & 0 \\ B & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \tilde{Q} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ B & AB \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\Rightarrow P\tilde{Q} = \begin{pmatrix} I_m & A \\ 0 & I_n \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ B & AB \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} AB & ABA \\ B & BA \end{pmatrix}$$

$$QP = \begin{pmatrix} AB & 0 \\ B & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} I_m & A \\ 0 & I_n \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} AB & ABA \\ B & BA \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\Rightarrow QP = P\tilde{Q} \Rightarrow P^{-1}QP = \tilde{Q} \Rightarrow Q \sim \tilde{Q}$$

$$\Rightarrow |xI - Q| = |xI - \tilde{Q}|$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{vmatrix} (xI_m - AB) & 0 \\ -B & xI_n \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} xI_m & 0 \\ -B & xI_n - BA \end{vmatrix}$$

$$\Rightarrow |xI_m - AB| x^n = x^m |xI_n - BA|$$

$$\Rightarrow |xI_m - AB| = x^{m-n} |xI_n - BA|$$

常用换位公式: 设 $A = A_{m \times n}$, $B = B_{n \times m}$

$$(1) |xI_m - AB| = x^{m-n} |xI_n - BA|$$

$$(2) |I_m - AB| = |I_n - BA|; \text{ 用 } (\pm kA) \text{ 代替 } A \text{ 得 } |I_m \pm kAB| = |I_n \pm kBA|$$

$$(3) \text{ 迹换位: } \operatorname{tr}(AB) = \operatorname{tr}(BA); \quad \left\{ \begin{array}{l} X = \begin{pmatrix} x_{11} & & * \\ & x_{22} & \\ * & & \ddots \\ & & & x_{nn} \end{pmatrix} \\ \operatorname{tr}(X) = x_{11} + x_{22} + \cdots + x_{nn} \end{array} \right.$$

Pf: (3): 写 $|xI - AB| = (x - \lambda_1)(x - \lambda_2) \cdots (x - \lambda_n)$, $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n$ 为 BA 的特征值

$$\Rightarrow (xI_m - AB) = x^{m-n} (x - \lambda_1)(x - \lambda_2) \cdots (x - \lambda_n)$$

$$\Rightarrow \{0, 0, \dots, 0, \lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n\} \text{ 为 } AB \text{ 的特征值}$$

$$\Rightarrow \operatorname{tr}(AB) = 0 + 0 + \cdots + 0 + \lambda_1 + \lambda_2 + \cdots + \lambda_n = \lambda_1 + \lambda_2 + \cdots + \lambda_n = \operatorname{tr}(BA)$$

eg. $\alpha = (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)^T, \beta = (b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n)^T$

$$\operatorname{tr}(\alpha\beta^T) = \operatorname{tr}(\beta^T\alpha) = \operatorname{tr} \left((b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n) \begin{pmatrix} a_1 \\ a_2 \\ \vdots \\ a_n \end{pmatrix} \right) = a_1 b_1 + a_2 b_2 + \cdots + a_n b_n$$

$$\text{eg. } A = \alpha\beta^T = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 \\ a_2 \\ \vdots \\ a_n \end{pmatrix} (b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n) = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 b_1 & a_1 b_2 & \cdots & a_1 b_n \\ a_2 b_1 & a_2 b_2 & \cdots & a_2 b_n \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_n b_1 & a_n b_2 & \cdots & a_n b_n \end{pmatrix}$$

$$|I_n - \alpha\beta^T| = |I_1 - (\beta^T \alpha)| = 1 - \beta^T \alpha = 1 - (a_1 b_1 + a_2 b_2 + \cdots + a_n b_n)$$

$$|xI_n - \alpha\beta^T| = x^{n-1} |(xI_1) - \beta^T \alpha| = x^{n-1} (x - \beta^T \alpha) = x^{n-1} (x - \text{tr}(A))$$

$$\Rightarrow \text{谱 } \sigma(A) = \{0, 0, \dots, 0, \text{tr}(a)\}$$

$$\text{eg. 镜面阵 } A = I_n - 2\varepsilon\varepsilon^T, \quad (|\varepsilon|^2 = 1 = \varepsilon^T \varepsilon), \quad \varepsilon = (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) \in R^n$$

$$|xI_n - A| = |(x-1)I_n + 2\varepsilon\varepsilon^T| = (x-1)^{n-1} |(x-1)I_1 + 2\varepsilon^T \varepsilon| = (x-1)^{n-1} (x+1)$$

$$\sigma(A) = \{1, 1, \dots, 1, -1\}$$

$$\text{同理: } |I_n - 2\varepsilon\varepsilon^T| = |I_1 - 2\varepsilon^T \varepsilon| = (1-2) = -1$$

$$\text{迹公式: (1) } \text{tr}(AB^T) = \text{tr}(B^T A) = \sum (a_{ij} b_{ij})$$

$$(2) \text{tr}(AB^H) = \text{tr}(B^H A) = \sum (a_{ij} \overline{b_{ij}})$$

$$\text{Pf: } A = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{m1} & a_{m2} & \cdots & a_{mn} \end{pmatrix}, \quad B^T = \begin{pmatrix} b_{11} & b_{21} & \cdots & b_{m1} \\ b_{12} & b_{22} & \cdots & b_{m2} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ b_{1n} & b_{2n} & \cdots & b_{mn} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\Rightarrow AB^T = \begin{pmatrix} \sum_{i=1}^n a_{1i} b_{1i} & & * \\ & \ddots & \\ * & & \sum_{i=1}^n a_{mi} b_{mi} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{tr}(AB^T) = \sum (a_{ij} b_{ij})$$

$$(3) \text{tr}(AA^H) = \text{tr}(A^H A) = \sum |a_{ij}|^2 \geq 0$$

迹公式应用在内积定义中:

$$C^n \text{ 中标准内积为 } (x, y) = \text{tr}(x \bullet y^H) = \text{tr}(y^H x) = \sum_{k=1}^n x_k \overline{y_k}$$

$$C^{m \times n} \text{ 中标准内积为 } (A, B) = \text{tr}(A \bullet B^H) = \sum (a_{ij} \overline{b_{ij}})$$

推论: 若 $A = A_{m \times n}$ 则 AA^H 与 $A^H A$ 的正特征值相同

$$\because |xI_m - AA^H| = x^{m-n} |xI_n - A^H A|$$

正交补与正交子空间

定义： 设 $W_1, W_2 \subset C^n(R^n)$ ，若 $\forall x \in W_1, y \in W_2$ ，有 $x \perp y$ ，即 $(x, y) = 0$

称 W_1 与 W_2 正交，记为 $W_1 \perp W_2$

定义： $x \perp W \Leftrightarrow x \perp y (\forall y \in W)$

引理： $W_1 \perp W_2 \Rightarrow W_1 \cap W_2 = \{\vec{0}\} \Rightarrow W_1 + W_2 = W_1 \oplus W_2$ (直和)

$$\Leftrightarrow \dim(W_1 + W_2) = \dim W_1 + \dim W_2$$

定义： 若 2 个子空间， $W_1, W_2 \subset C^n(R^n)$ ，适合 $W_1 \perp W_2$ ， $\dim W_1 + \dim W_2 = n$

则称 W_1, W_2 互为正交补

W_1, W_2 互为正交补 $W_1 + W_2 = C^n$ 且 $W_1 \perp W_2$

一般子空间 W 的正交补记为 W^\perp (唯一的)， $W \oplus W^\perp = C^n$

引理： $A = A_{m \times n} \in C^{m \times n}$ ，则 (1) $\mathcal{N}(A^H) = \{x | A^H x = 0\}$ 与 $\mathcal{R}(A)$ 正交

$$\mathcal{R}(A) \perp \mathcal{N}(A^H) \Rightarrow \mathcal{R}(A) \oplus \mathcal{N}(A^H) = C^m$$

$$(2) \text{ (同理) } \mathcal{N}(A) \perp \mathcal{R}(A^H)$$

Pf: $\forall x \in \mathcal{N}(A^H), \forall y \in \mathcal{R}(A)$ ，即 $y = AZ$

$$\Rightarrow (x, y) = y^H x = (AZ)^H x = Z^H (A^H x) = 0 \Rightarrow \mathcal{N}(A^H) \perp \mathcal{R}(A)$$

应用： 在实矩阵条件下： $A = A_{m \times n} \in R^{m \times n}$

有 (1) $\mathcal{R}(A) \perp \mathcal{N}(A^T)$ ， $\mathcal{R}(A) \oplus \mathcal{N}(A^T) = R^m$ ，即 $\mathcal{R}(A)^\perp = \mathcal{N}(A^T)$

(2) $\mathcal{R}(A^T) \perp \mathcal{N}(A)$ ， $\mathcal{R}(A^T) \oplus \mathcal{N}(A) = R^n$ ，即 $\mathcal{R}(A^T)^\perp = \mathcal{N}(A)$

Ex. 求 $W = \text{span}(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_s) \subset R^n$ 的正交补 W^\perp

解： 令 $A = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_s)_{n \times s}$ 可知 $\mathcal{R}(A) = \text{span}(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_s)$

求解空间 $\mathcal{N}(A^T) = \{x | A^T x = 0\} = \text{span}(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_{n-r})$ ， $r = \text{rank}(A)$

$$\Rightarrow \mathcal{N}(A^T) = \mathcal{R}(A)^\perp = \text{span}(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_{n-r})$$

注： 幂等 (投影) 阵性质

幂等条件： $A^2 = A$ ， $A \in C^{n \times n}$ $A \in C^{n \times n}$

则有 (1) $A^2 = A \Leftrightarrow A(I - A) = (I - A)A = 0$

(2) A 的特征值只可能为 0 或 1, 且 A 可对角化 (\because 化式 $x^2 - x$ 无重根)

(3) $\mathcal{R}(A) \oplus \mathcal{N}(A) = C^n$

$\because \forall x = Ax + (x - Ax) = (Ax) + (I - A)x$, 且 $A(I - A)x = (A - A^2)x = 0x = 0$

即 $Ax \in \mathcal{R}(A)$, $(I - A)x \in \mathcal{N}(A) \Rightarrow C^n = \mathcal{R}(A) \oplus \mathcal{N}(A)$

且 $\dim \mathcal{R}(A) \oplus \dim \mathcal{N}(A) = r(A) + n - r(A) = n = \dim C^n$

$C^n = \mathcal{R}(A) + \mathcal{N}(A)$

(4) $\mathcal{N}(A) = \mathcal{R}(I - A)$

$\because \forall y \in \mathcal{R}(I - A)$, $y = (I - A)x$

必有: $Ay = A(I - A)x = 0 \Rightarrow y \in \mathcal{N}(A)$

同样: $\forall y \in \mathcal{N}(A) \Rightarrow Ay = 0 \Rightarrow y = y - Ay = (I - A)y \in \mathcal{R}(I - A)$

eg. 若 $A^2 = A = A^H$ (叫正交投影)

则 $\mathcal{N}(A^H) \perp \mathcal{R}(A)$, 即 $\mathcal{N}(A) \perp \mathcal{R}(A)$, 且 $\mathcal{R}(A)^\perp = \mathcal{N}(A)$, $\mathcal{R}(A) \oplus \mathcal{N}(A) = C^n$

§4 常用矩阵分解

已知分解公式: QR 分解; 许尔公式 $A = Q \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & * \\ & \lambda_2 & \\ O & & \ddots \\ & & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix} Q^H$, (Q 为 \mathcal{U} 阵); 正规分

解; 谱分解

秩 1 分解

若 $\text{rank}(A) = 1$, 则 $A = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 \\ a_2 \\ \vdots \\ a_n \end{pmatrix} (b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n) = \alpha \beta^T$

Pf: $\because A = A_{m \times n}$, $\text{rank}(A) = 1$

\Rightarrow 有一个非 0 列 $\alpha = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 \\ a_2 \\ \vdots \\ a_n \end{pmatrix}$, 其它列都是 α 的倍数

可写 $\alpha_1 = b_1\alpha, \alpha_2 = b_2\alpha, \dots, \alpha_n = b_n\alpha$

$$\Rightarrow A = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n)_{m \times n} = (b_1\alpha, b_2\alpha, \dots, b_n\alpha) = \alpha(b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n) = \alpha\beta^T$$

$$\text{eg. } A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} (1, 1, 1)$$

秩 r 分解 (也叫满秩分解或高低分解)

条件: $A = A_{m \times n}, \text{rank}(A) = r$

则有 $A = B_{m \times r} C_{r \times n}$

$$\text{eg. } A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 2 & 2 \\ 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}, \text{ 取 } \beta_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \beta_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

则: $\alpha_1 = \beta_1, \alpha_2 = \beta_2, \alpha_3 = \beta_1 + \beta_2$

$$\Rightarrow A = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3) = (\beta_1, \beta_2) \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{广阵格式})$$

$$\Rightarrow A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 2 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{eg. } A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 4 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 & -1 & 2 \\ -1 & 2 & -2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}_{3 \times 4} \text{ 取 } \beta_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}, \beta_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$$

写 $\alpha_1 = \beta_1, \alpha_2 = 2\beta_1, \alpha_3 = \beta_2, \alpha_4 = \beta_1 - \beta_2$

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \\ -1 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$A = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3, \alpha_4) \underline{\underline{(\text{广阵})}} (\beta_1, \beta_2) \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{方法: } A \xrightarrow{\text{行变}} \tilde{C} = \begin{pmatrix} I_r & * & \dots & * \\ 0 & * & \dots & * \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & * & \dots & * \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{行最简形})$$

I_r 表示 A 中前 r 列为极大无关组

则有 $A = (\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_r)(I_r, *, \dots, *)_{r \times n}$

注：若 \tilde{C} 中的 I_r 分布在其它列，则有相应公式

$$\text{解法： } A \xrightarrow{\text{行变}} \begin{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} & \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} & \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} & \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \end{pmatrix}, \text{ 取 } \beta_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}, \beta_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\Rightarrow A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \\ -1 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Ex. 《矩阵分析》P211 1 (1) (2) (3)

$$2. A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & 3 \\ 2 & -2 & 6 \\ 1 & -1 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$$

秩 r 分解 (满秩分解) $A = A_{m \times n}$, $\text{rank}(A) = r$

有 $A = B_{m \times r} C_{r \times n}$, $B = B_{m \times r}$ 为列满秩 (高阵)

$C = C_{r \times n}$ 为行满秩 (低阵)

引理：设 $A \xrightarrow{\text{行变}} \begin{pmatrix} I_r & D \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$ (行最简形)

则 A 中前 r 列 $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_r$ 为无关组

且 $A = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_r)(I_r \ D) = BC$

Pf: 由条件 $A = P \begin{pmatrix} I_r & D \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$ (P 为可逆阵)

$$\because \begin{pmatrix} I_r & D \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} I_r \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} (I_r \ D)$$

$$\text{令 } P \begin{pmatrix} I_r \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = B = B_{m \times r} \Rightarrow A = P \begin{pmatrix} I_r \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} (I_r \ D) = B(I_r \ D)$$

$$\because A = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_r, \dots) \quad B(I_r \ D) = (BI_r \ BD) = (B, \dots)$$

$$(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_r | \dots) = (B | \dots) \Rightarrow (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_r) = B$$

$$A = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_r)(I_r \ D)$$

同样：当 I_r 的列分布在其它位置，也有相应结论 $A = (\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_r)C$

eg. $A = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & -1 & -1 & 1 \\ 0 & -2 & 2 & -2 & 6 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & -2 & 3 \end{pmatrix}_{3 \times 5}$

解: (行变法) $A \xrightarrow{\text{行变}} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} & -1 & \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} & -1 \\ 0 & \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} & 0 & \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} & -2 \\ 0 & \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} & 0 & \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} & -2 \end{pmatrix}$

取 $B = (\beta_1, \beta_2) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ -2 & -2 \\ 1 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ -2 & -2 \\ 1 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & -1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & -2 \end{pmatrix}$

列满 (高) 阵性质

引理: (1) 若 $B = B_{m \times r}$ 为列满的, 则它有左逆阵 B_L 使得 $B_L B = I_r$

(2) 若 $C = C_{r \times n}$ 为行满的, 则它有右逆阵 C_R 使得 $CC_R = I_r$

其中可取 $B_L = (B^H B)^{-1} B^H$ $C_R = C^H (CC^H)^{-1}$

验证: (1) 若 B 为列满的, 则左消法成立: $BX = BY \Leftrightarrow X = Y$

(2) 若 C 为行满的, 则右消法成立: $XC = YC \Leftrightarrow X = Y$

引理: (1) $y^H y = |y|^2 = 0 \Leftrightarrow y = 0, y \in C^n$

(2) $\text{rank}(A) = \text{rank}(A^T) = \text{rank}(\bar{A}) = \text{rank}(A^H)$

(3) $\text{rank}(A^H A) = \text{rank}(A A^H) = \text{rank}(A)$ $A = A_{m \times n}$

Pf: \because 先证明 $A^H A x = 0$ 与 $A x = 0$ 同解

\because 由 $A^H A x = 0 \Rightarrow x^H A^H A x = 0 \Rightarrow (Ax)^H (Ax) = 0 \quad (y^H y = 0)$

$\Rightarrow Ax = 0 \quad (\text{同解})$

$\Rightarrow \text{rank}(A^H A) = \text{rank}(A)$

(4) $A^H A = 0 \Leftrightarrow A = 0$

Pf: $\because \text{rank}(A) = \text{rank}(A^H A) = 0$

$\text{rank}(A) = 0 \Rightarrow A = 0$

注: 利用 $\text{tr}(A^H A) = \text{tr}(A A^H) = \sum |a_{ij}|^2$

(5) $A^H A x = 0 \Leftrightarrow A x = 0 \quad (\text{同解})$

(6) $A^H A$ 、 AA^H 都是 Hermite 半正定阵, 且有相同的正特征值

$$\because (|xI_m - AA^H| = x^{m-n}|xI_n - A^H A|)$$

定义: 设 $A = A_{m \times n}$, $A^H A$ 得特征值 (谱) 为 $\lambda_1 \geq 0, \lambda_2 \geq 0, \dots, \lambda_n \geq 0$

称 $\sqrt{\lambda_1}, \sqrt{\lambda_2}, \dots, \sqrt{\lambda_n}$ 为 A 的奇异值

若 $\text{rank}(A^H A) = \text{rank}(A) = r$, 则恰有 r 个正根 $\lambda_1 \geq 0, \lambda_2 \geq 0, \dots, \lambda_r \geq 0, \lambda_{r+1} = \lambda_{r+2} = \dots = \lambda_n = 0$, 称 $\sqrt{\lambda_1}, \sqrt{\lambda_2}, \dots, \sqrt{\lambda_r}$ 为 A 的正奇异值

(同样: $A^H A$ 也有 r 个正根 $\lambda_1 \geq 0, \lambda_2 \geq 0, \dots, \lambda_r \geq 0$)

第 1 奇异分解公式 (短分解): 设 $A = A_{m \times n}$ 的正奇异值为 $\sqrt{\lambda_1}, \sqrt{\lambda_2}, \dots, \sqrt{\lambda_r}$

$r = \text{rank}(A)$ 则有 2 个实阵 P_1 与 Q_1

$$\text{使得 } A = P_1 \Delta Q_1^H \quad \Delta = \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{\lambda_1} & & & O \\ & \sqrt{\lambda_2} & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ O & & & \sqrt{\lambda_r} \end{pmatrix} \quad (P_1^H P_1 = I_r, \quad Q_1^H Q_1 = I_r)$$

$$\text{Pf: } \because Q^H (A^H A) Q = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & & O \\ & \lambda_2 & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ O & & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{正规分解}) \quad Q \text{ 为 实阵}$$

且 $\lambda_1 \geq \lambda_2 \geq \dots \geq \lambda_r > 0, \lambda_{r+1} = \lambda_{r+2} = \dots = \lambda_n = 0 \quad r = \text{rank}(A)$

写 $Q = (q_1, q_2, \dots, q_n)_{n \times n}$

$$\Rightarrow (A^H A)q_1 = \lambda_1 q_1, (A^H A)q_2 = \lambda_2 q_2, \dots, (A^H A)q_r = \lambda_r q_r$$

$$(A^H A)q_{r+1} = \lambda_{r+1} q_{r+1} = 0, \dots, (A^H A)q_n = \lambda_n q_n = 0$$

$$\text{令 } Q_1 = \left(\frac{q_1}{|q_1|}, \frac{q_2}{|q_2|}, \dots, \frac{q_r}{|q_r|} \right)_{n \times r} \quad (\text{实阵})$$

$$P_1 = \left(\frac{Aq_1}{|Aq_1|}, \frac{Aq_2}{|Aq_2|}, \dots, \frac{Aq_r}{|Aq_r|} \right)_{m \times r} \quad \text{也为实阵}$$

$$\because (Aq_1, Aq_2) = (Aq_2)^H (Aq_1) = q_2^H (A^H A) q_1 = \lambda_1 (q_2^H q_1) = 0 \quad (q_1 \perp q_2)$$

$\therefore P_1$ 为实阵

$$\text{又知: } |Aq_1|^2 = (Aq_1)^H (Aq_1) = q_1^H (A^H A) q_1 = \lambda_1 (q_1^H q_1) = \lambda_1 |q_1|^2 = \lambda_1$$

$$\Rightarrow |Aq_1| = \sqrt{\lambda_1}, \quad \text{同理 } |Aq_2| = \sqrt{\lambda_2}, \dots, |Aq_r| = \sqrt{\lambda_r} \geq 0$$

$$\Rightarrow P_1 = \left(\frac{Aq_1}{|Aq_1|}, \frac{Aq_2}{|Aq_2|}, \dots, \frac{Aq_r}{|Aq_r|} \right) = \left(\frac{Aq_1}{\sqrt{\lambda_1}}, \frac{Aq_2}{\sqrt{\lambda_2}}, \dots, \frac{Aq_r}{\sqrt{\lambda_r}} \right)_{m \times r} \quad (\text{次 } \mathbb{Z})$$

注: 由 $A^H Ax = 0 \Leftrightarrow Ax = 0$

$$\therefore A^H Aq_{r+1} = A^H Aq_{r+2} = \dots = A^H Aq_n = 0 \Rightarrow Aq_{r+1} = Aq_{r+2} = \dots = Aq_n = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow A(q_1 q_1^H + q_2 q_2^H + \dots + q_r q_r^H) = A(q_1 q_1^H + q_2 q_2^H + \dots + q_r q_r^H + q_{r+1} q_{r+1}^H + \dots + q_n q_n^H)$$

$$\text{且 } q_1 q_1^H + q_2 q_2^H + \dots + q_n q_n^H = (q_1, q_2, \dots, q_n) \begin{pmatrix} q_1^H \\ q_2^H \\ \vdots \\ q_n^H \end{pmatrix} = QQ^H = I_n$$

$$\Rightarrow A(q_1 q_1^H + q_2 q_2^H + \dots + q_n q_n^H) = AI_n = A$$

$$\text{计算: } P_1 \Delta Q_1^H = \left(\frac{Aq_1}{\sqrt{\lambda_1}}, \frac{Aq_2}{\sqrt{\lambda_2}}, \dots, \frac{Aq_r}{\sqrt{\lambda_r}} \right) \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{\lambda_1} & & & 0 \\ & \sqrt{\lambda_2} & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ 0 & & & \sqrt{\lambda_r} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} q_1^H \\ q_2^H \\ \vdots \\ q_n^H \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= (Aq_1, Aq_2, \dots, Aq_r) \begin{pmatrix} q_1^H \\ q_2^H \\ \vdots \\ q_n^H \end{pmatrix} \\ = A(q_1 q_1^H + q_2 q_2^H + \dots + q_r q_r^H) = AI_n = A$$

第2奇异分解公式: 设 $A = A_{m \times n}$, 奇异值为 $\sqrt{\lambda_1}, \sqrt{\lambda_2}, \dots, \sqrt{\lambda_r} > 0$ 则存在 2 个次 \mathbb{Z} 阵

$$P = P_{m \times m}, Q = Q_{n \times n} \text{ 使得 } A = P(\Sigma)Q^H \quad \Sigma = \begin{pmatrix} \Delta & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}_{m \times n}$$

Pf: 把 P_1, Q_1 扩充为 U 阵

$$P = (P_1, P_2)_{m \times m} \quad (\text{不唯一}) \quad Q = (Q_1, Q_2)_{n \times n} \quad (\text{不唯一})$$

$$\text{计算 } P(\Sigma)Q^H = (P_1, P_2) \begin{pmatrix} \Delta & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} (Q_1, Q_2) = P_1 \Delta Q_1^H = A$$

分解方法: 1. 求 $(A^H A)$ 得特征值 $\lambda_1 \geq \lambda_2 \geq \dots \geq \lambda_r > 0 \quad r = \text{rank}(A)$

正奇异值为 $\sqrt{\lambda_1}, \sqrt{\lambda_2}, \dots, \sqrt{\lambda_r}$

2. 求 $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_r$ 对应的正交特征向量: q_1, q_2, \dots, q_r (不必单位化)

3. 令次酉阵 $P_1 = \left(\frac{Aq_1}{|Aq_1|}, \frac{Aq_2}{|Aq_2|}, \dots, \frac{Aq_r}{|Aq_r|} \right)$, $Q_1 = \left(\frac{q_1}{|q_1|}, \frac{q_2}{|q_2|}, \dots, \frac{q_r}{|q_r|} \right)$

则有 $A = P_1 \Delta Q_1^H$ $\Delta = \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{\lambda_1} & & & O \\ & \sqrt{\lambda_2} & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ O & & & \sqrt{\lambda_r} \end{pmatrix}$

4. 可用观察扩充法求 2 个 酉阵 $P = (P_1, P_2)$, $Q = (Q_1, Q_2)$

则有 $A = P(\Sigma)Q^H$ $\Sigma = \begin{pmatrix} \Delta & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}_{m \times n}$

注: 可求 $A^H x = 0$ 得 P_2 , 可求 $Ax = 0$ 得 Q_2 ($\because Ax = 0 \Leftrightarrow A^H Ax = 0$
 $AA^H = 0 \Leftrightarrow AA^H x = 0$)

eg. (1) $A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}_{3 \times 2}$ (2) $C = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}_{2 \times 3}$ 求奇异分解

解: (1) $A^H A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 2 \\ 2 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$, 谱 $\sigma(A^H A) = \{4, 0\}$, 奇异值 $\sqrt{4} = 2$

$\lambda = 4$ 的特征向量: $q_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$, 令 $Q_1 = \begin{pmatrix} q_1 \\ |q_1| \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \end{pmatrix}$, 令 $P_1 = \begin{pmatrix} Aq_1 \\ |Aq_1| \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$

\Rightarrow (短分解) $A = P_1 \Delta Q_1^H = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} (2) \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \end{pmatrix}$

扩充为 酉阵 $P = (P_1, P_2) = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & 0 & \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & 0 & -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \end{pmatrix}$ (酉阵) ($P^H = P$)

$$Q = (Q_1, Q_2) = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{正交阵}) \quad (Q^H = Q)$$

$$\Rightarrow A = P\Sigma Q^H = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & 0 & \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & 0 & -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \end{pmatrix}$$

(2) 同理可求 $C^H C$ 的特征值 $\{4, 0, 0\}$

或用转置公式: $C^H = A = P\Sigma Q^H \Rightarrow C = A^H = (P\Sigma Q^H)^H = Q\Sigma P^H = \dots$

Ex. 求奇异分解

$$1. (1) A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2) C = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$2. (1) A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2) C = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 & 0 \\ 3 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$3. A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

§5 范数与级数

eg. C^n 中向量 $x = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)^T$ 长度

$$|x| = \sqrt{(x, x)} = \sqrt{x^H x} = \sqrt{\text{tr}(xx^H)} = \sqrt{|x_1|^2 + |x_2|^2 + \dots + |x_n|^2}$$

有 3 条性质:

$$(1) \text{正性: } |x| > 0 \quad (x \neq \vec{0}) \quad |\vec{0}| = 0 \quad (|x| = 0 \Leftrightarrow x = \vec{0})$$

$$(2) \text{齐性: } |kx| = |k| |x|$$

$$(3) \text{三角性: } |x + y| \leq |x| + |y|$$

推论: (1) $|-x| = |x|$, (2) $||x| - |y|| \leq |x - y|$

注: 任一内积空间 V 中, 可引入长度 (模): $|\alpha| = \sqrt{(\alpha, \alpha)} \quad \alpha \in V$

有舒瓦兹不等式: $|(\alpha, \beta)| \leq \sqrt{(\alpha, \alpha)}\sqrt{(\beta, \beta)} = |\alpha||\beta| \Rightarrow$ 三角性: $|\alpha + \beta| \leq |\alpha| + |\beta|$

且有 (1) 正性, (2) 齐性

范数定义: 若空间 V 中有一个实函数 $\varphi(x) = \|x\|$ 适合

(1) 正性: $\varphi(x) > 0 \ (x \neq \vec{0}) \quad \varphi(0) = 0$

(2) 齐性: $\varphi(kx) = |k|\varphi(x)$

(3) 三角式: $\varphi(x + y) \leq \varphi(x) + \varphi(y)$

则称: $\varphi(x) = \|x\|$ 为 V 上一个范数

推论: (1) $\| -x \| = \|x\|$, (2) $|||x| - |y||| \leq \|x - y\|$

C^n 中常用 3 种范数: $x = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)^T$

(1) ∞ 范数: $\|x\|_\infty = \max(|x_1|, |x_2|, \dots, |x_n|)$

(2) 1 范数: $\|x\|_1 = \sum |x_j| = |x_1| + |x_2| + \dots + |x_n|$

(3) 2 范数: $\|x\|_2 = |x| = \sqrt{(x, x)} = \sqrt{x^H x} = \sqrt{\text{tr}(xx^H)} = \sqrt{|x_1|^2 + |x_2|^2 + \dots + |x_n|^2}$ (长度)

都具有 (1) (2) (3)

eg. $V = C^{n \times n} \quad A = (a_{ij}), B = (b_{ij}) \in V$

利用内积: $(A, B) = \text{tr}(AB^H) = \text{tr}(B^H A) = \sum a_{ij} \overline{b_{ij}}$

长度 (模) $\|A\| = \sqrt{(A, A)} = \sqrt{\text{tr}(AA^H)} = \sqrt{\sum |a_{ij}|^2}$

具有 (1) 正性 (2) 齐性 (3) $\|A + B\| \leq \|A\| + \|B\|$

应用 (收敛性)

范数等价定理: 任 2 个范数 $\|x\|_a, \|x\|_b$ 都等价 (略证)

即 $\exists k_1 > 0, k_2 > 0$ 使得 $k_1 \|x\|_b \leq \|x\|_a \leq k_2 \|x\|_b$ 对一切 x 成立

收敛定义: 设 $x^{(k)} = (x_1^{(k)}, x_2^{(k)}, \dots, x_n^{(k)})^T \ (k = 1, 2, 3, \dots)$ 为向量列, $\alpha = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n)^T$

若 $x_1^{(k)} \rightarrow \alpha_1, x_2^{(k)} \rightarrow \alpha_2, \dots, x_n^{(k)} \rightarrow \alpha_n \ (k \rightarrow \infty)$

称 $x^{(k)} \rightarrow \alpha$ 或 $\lim x^{(k)} = \alpha$

收敛引理: $x^{(k)} \rightarrow \alpha \Leftrightarrow \|x^{(k)} - \alpha\| \rightarrow 0 \quad (\|x\| \text{ 为任取范数})$

(可用 $\|x\|_1$ 证明, 再用等价性)

矩阵范数定义： 设 $C^{n \times n}$ 上有实函数 $\varphi(x) = \|x\|$ $x \in C^{n \times n}$

适合：(1) 正性 $\varphi(x) > 0, \varphi(0) = 0$

(2) 齐性： $\varphi(kx) = |k|\varphi(x)$

(3) 三角式： $\varphi(x + y) \leq \varphi(x) + \varphi(y)$

(4) 相容性： $\varphi(xy) \leq \varphi(x)\varphi(y)$ $\|xy\| \leq \|x\|\|y\|$

称 $\varphi(x) = \|x\|$ 为 $C^{n \times n}$ 上的矩阵范数（方阵范数）

eg. m_1 范数： 任取 $A = (a_{ij}) \in C^{n \times n}$ ，规定 $\varphi(x) = \|x\|_{m_1} \triangleq \sum |a_{ij}|$ （总合）

则有：(1) 正性；(2) 齐性；(3) 三角性；(4) 相容 $\|AB\|_{m_1} \leq \|A\|_{m_1}\|B\|_{m_1}$

eg. F 范数： 任取 $A = (a_{ij})_{n \times n}$ ， $B = (b_{ij})_{n \times n}$ ，规定 $\|A\|_F = \sqrt{\text{tr}(A^H A)} = \sqrt{\sum |a_{ij}|^2}$

则有：则有：(1) 正性；(2) 齐性；(3) 三角性；(4) 相容 $\|AB\|_F \leq \|A\|_F\|B\|_F$

$C^{n \times n}$ 也有 3 种常用范数： $A = (a_{ij})_{n \times n} = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n) = \begin{pmatrix} A_1 \\ A_2 \\ \vdots \\ A_n \end{pmatrix}$ （行）

∞ 范数： $\|A\|_\infty = \max(\|A_1\|_1, \|A_2\|_1, \dots, \|A_n\|_1)$ （行范数）

1 范数： $\|A\|_1 = \max(\|\alpha_1\|_1, \|\alpha_2\|_1, \dots, \|\alpha_n\|_1)$ （列范数）

2 范数： $\|A\|_2 = \sqrt{\lambda_1} = \sqrt{(A^H A) \text{ 的最特征值}}$ （最大奇异值）

都有 (1) (2) (3) (4) 相容性 $\|AB\| \leq \|A\|\|B\|$

矩阵与向量的相容条件： $\|Ax\| \leq \|A\|\|x\|$ ， $A \in C^{n \times n}$ ， $x \in C^n$

设 $\|A\|_m$ 为矩阵范数， $\|x\|_v$ 为向量范数

相容条件为： $\|Ax\|_v \leq \|A\|_m\|x\|_v$

定理 1： 每种向量范数 $\|x\|_v$ 都对应一种矩阵范数 $\|A\|_m$ 使得 $\|Ax\|_v \leq \|A\|_m\|x\|_v$ $A \in C^{n \times n}$ ， $x \in C^n$

注： 这种与 $\|x\|_v$ 对应的 $\|A\|_m$ 叫做 $\|x\|_v$ 的诱导范数

常用诱导范数

(1) ∞ 范数 $\|x\|_\infty$ 诱导 $\|A\|_\infty$ （行范） $\|Ax\|_\infty \leq \|A\|_\infty\|x\|_\infty$

(2) 1 范数 $\|x\|_1$ 诱导 $\|A\|_1$ （列范） $\|Ax\|_1 \leq \|A\|_1\|x\|_1$

(3) 2 范数 $\|x\|_2 = |x|$ 诱导 $\|A\|_2$ （根范） $\|Ax\|_2 \leq \|A\|_2\|x\|_2$

其它相容公式:
$$\begin{cases} \|Ax\|_2 \leq \|A\|_F \|x\|_2 \\ \|Ax\|_1 \leq \|A\|_{m_1} \|x\|_1 \end{cases}$$

定理 3: 任一矩阵范数: $\|A\|$ 都对应 (诱导) 一个向量范数 $\|x\|$

使得 $\|Ax\| \leq \|A\| \|x\| \quad \forall A \in C^{n \times n}, x \in C^n$

Pf: 固定一个向量 $\alpha = (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)^T \neq \vec{0}$

规定 $\|x\|_{\Delta} = \|(x\alpha^T)\|$ (有定义!) $x\alpha^T \in C^{n \times n}$

check (1) $\|x\| > 0 \quad (x \neq \vec{0}) \quad (2) \|kx\| = |k| \|x\| \quad (3) \text{三角}$

(4) $\|Ax\|_{\Delta} = \|(Ax)\alpha^T\| = \|A(x\alpha^T)\| \leq \|A\| \|x\alpha^T\| = \|A\| \|x\|$

eg. 取 $\|A\| = \|A\|_F$, 取 $\alpha = (1, 0, \dots, 0)^T$

规定 $\|x\|_{\Delta} = \left\| \begin{pmatrix} x_1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ x_2 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ x_n & 0 & \cdots & 0 \end{pmatrix} \right\|_F = \sqrt{|x_1|^2 + |x_2|^2 + \cdots + |x_n|^2} = \|x\|_2$

$\Rightarrow \|Ax\|_2 \leq \|A\|_F \|x\|_2$

引理: $A \in C^{n \times n}$, $\|A\|$ 为任一范数

则: (1) $\|A^k\| \leq \|A\|^k \quad (\because \|A^2\| \leq \|A\|^2, \dots)$

(2) 谱半径 $\rho(A) \leq \|A\|$, 其中 $\rho(A) = \max(|\lambda_1|, |\lambda_2|, \dots, |\lambda_n|)$

(3) A 为正规 $\Rightarrow \rho(A) = \|A\|_2$

引理: 固定 $Q = Q_{n \times n}$ (可逆) $\|X\|$ 为矩阵范数, $X \in C^{n \times n}$

令 $\varphi(X) = \|Q^{-1}XQ\|$, 则 $\varphi(X)$ 也是矩阵范数

\because (1) (2) (3)

(4): $\varphi(AB) = \|Q^{-1}(AB)Q\| = \|(Q^{-1}AQ)(Q^{-1}BQ)\| \leq \|Q^{-1}AQ\| \|Q^{-1}BQ\| = \varphi(A) \varphi(B)$

小范数公式: 设 ε 为任取小正数, 则某一范数 $\|x\|$

$A = A_{n \times n}$ 为已知, 使得 (1) $\|A\| \leq \rho(A) + \varepsilon$; (2) 若 $\rho(A) < 1$ 则有 $\|A\| < 1$

Pf: $\because A \sim J$ (Jordan 形)

$$\text{可写 } J = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & (*) & & \\ & \lambda_2 & \ddots & \\ & & \ddots & (*) \\ & & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix} \quad (*) \text{ 为 } 0 \text{ 或 } 1$$

$$\exists \text{ 可逆 } P = P_{n \times n} \text{ 使得 } P^{-1}AP = J = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & (*) & & \\ & \lambda_2 & \ddots & \\ & & \ddots & (*) \\ & & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix} \quad |*| \leq 1$$

$$\text{取 } D = \begin{pmatrix} \varepsilon & & & \\ & \varepsilon^2 & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ & & & \varepsilon^n \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow D^{-1}(P^{-1}AP)D = D^{-1}JD = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & (*)\varepsilon & & \\ & \lambda_2 & (*)\varepsilon & \\ & & \ddots & \ddots \\ & & & \lambda_{n-1} & (*)\varepsilon \\ & & & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix}$$

引用 ∞ (行) 范数 $\|X\|_\infty$; $X \in C^{n \times n}$

令 $Q = PD$, 则 $\varphi(X) = \|Q^{-1}XQ\|_\infty$ 为新范数

$$\Rightarrow \varphi(A) = \|Q^{-1}AQ\|_\infty = \left\| \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & (*)\varepsilon & & \\ & \lambda_2 & (*)\varepsilon & \\ & & \ddots & \ddots \\ & & & \lambda_{n-1} & (*)\varepsilon \\ & & & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix} \right\|_\infty$$

$$\because |\lambda_1| + |(*)\varepsilon| \leq |\lambda_1| + \varepsilon, |\lambda_2| + |(*)\varepsilon| \leq |\lambda_2| + \varepsilon, \dots$$

$$\Rightarrow \varphi(A) = \|Q^{-1}AQ\|_\infty \leq \rho(A) + \varepsilon$$

$$(2) \quad \because \rho(A) < 1, \text{ 取 } \varepsilon > 0 \text{ 很小, } \rho(A) + \varepsilon < 1$$

$$\text{则 } \|A\| \leq \rho(A) + \varepsilon < 1$$

常用范数公式:

小范数引理: 固定任一方阵 A ; $\forall \varepsilon > 0$, 则有某个范数 $\|\cdot\|_A$ 使得:

$$(1) \quad \|A\|_A \leq \rho(A) + \varepsilon$$

$$(2) \quad \text{若 } \rho(A) < 1, \text{ 也有 } \|A\|_A < 1$$

注: 这个 $\|\cdot\|_A$ 与 A 有关, 对另外矩阵 B , $\|B\|_A \leq \rho(B) + \varepsilon$ 不一定成立

引理: (1) $\rho(A) < 1 \Rightarrow \|A^k\| \rightarrow 0 \quad (k \rightarrow \infty)$

(2) 某一范数 $\|A\| < 1 \Rightarrow \|A^k\| \rightarrow 0 \quad (k \rightarrow \infty)$

Pf: (2) 若 $\|A\| < 1 \Rightarrow \|A^k\| \leq \|A\|^k \rightarrow 0 \Rightarrow \|A^k\| \rightarrow 0$

(1) 若 $\rho(A) < 1 \Rightarrow \exists$ 某范数 $\|A\| < 1 \stackrel{(2)}{\Rightarrow} \|A^k\| \rightarrow 0$

若 $\|A^k\| \rightarrow 0$ 且 $\rho(A^k) \leq \|A^k\| \rightarrow 0 \Rightarrow \rho(A^k) \rightarrow 0$

又 $\rho(A^k) = (\rho(A))^k \rightarrow 0$

$\therefore (1) \Rightarrow \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} A^k = 0$

推论: $\forall \varepsilon > 0, \frac{\|A^k\|}{(\rho(A) + \varepsilon)^k} \rightarrow 0 \quad (k \rightarrow \infty) \Rightarrow \|A^k\| \leq M(\rho(A) + \varepsilon)^k \quad (k \text{ 很大})$

Pf: 令 $B = \frac{A}{\rho(A) + \varepsilon} \Rightarrow \rho(B) = \frac{\rho(A)}{\rho(A) + \varepsilon} < 1 \Rightarrow B^k \rightarrow 0 \quad (k \rightarrow \infty)$

注: $\sigma(A) = \{\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n\}$ (A 的谱); $\rho(A) = \max\{|\lambda_1|, |\lambda_2|, \dots, |\lambda_n|\}$

引理: (1) 若 $\sigma(A) = \{\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n\}$, 则 $\sigma(A^k) = \{\lambda_1^k, \lambda_2^k, \dots, \lambda_n^k\}$

(2) 对任一多项式 $f(x)$ 有 $\sigma(f(A)) = \{f(\lambda_1), f(\lambda_2), \dots, f(\lambda_n)\}$

(3) $\rho(A^k) = \max\{|\lambda_1|^k, |\lambda_2|^k, \dots, |\lambda_n|^k\} = \rho^k(A)$

定义: 级数 $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} A_k = A_0 + A_1 + \dots + A_k + \dots$

($A_k \in C^{n \times n}$) 它收敛于 $A \Leftrightarrow \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} (A_0 + A_1 + \dots + A_k) = A$

引理: 绝对收敛, 必收敛

即: $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \|A_k\| = \|A_0\| + \|A_1\| + \dots + \|A_k\| + \dots$ 收敛 $\Rightarrow \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} A_k$ 收敛

eg. (1) 某个 $\|A\| < 1 \Rightarrow \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} A^k = I + A + \dots + A^k + \dots$ 绝对收敛

(2) $\rho(A) < 1 \Rightarrow \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} A^k$ 绝对收敛

Pf: (1) $\|A\| < 1 \Rightarrow \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \|A^k\| \leq \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \|A\|^k$ (因为 $\|A^k\| \leq \|A\|^k$)

$$\text{且 } \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \|A\|^k = \frac{\|I\|}{1 - \|A\|} \quad (\text{绝对收敛})$$

$$(2) \quad \rho(A) < 1 \Rightarrow \text{某 } \|A\| < 1 \Rightarrow \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} A^k \text{ 收敛}$$

引理: 若 $\rho(A) < 1$, 则 $I + A + \dots + A^k + \dots = (I - A)^{-1}$

Pf: $\because (I + A + \dots + A^k + \dots)$ 收敛

$$\begin{aligned} &\Rightarrow (I - A)(I + A + \dots + A^k + \dots) = I(I + A + \dots + A^k + \dots) - A(I + A + \dots + A^k + \dots) \\ &= (I + A + \dots + A^k + \dots) - (A + A^2 + \dots + A^{k+1} + \dots) = I \\ &\Rightarrow (I - A)^{-1} = I + A + \dots + A^k + \dots \end{aligned}$$

eg. $\rho(A) < 1$ (或 $\|A\| < 1$), 则 $(I - A)$ 可逆且 $(I - A)^{-1} = I + A + \dots + A^k + \dots$

Pf: 写 $\sigma(A) = \{\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n\}$ 则 $\sigma(I - A) = \{1 - \lambda_1, 1 - \lambda_2, \dots, 1 - \lambda_n\}$ (取 $f(x) = 1 - x$)

$$\text{且: } |\lambda_1| \leq \rho(A) < 1, |\lambda_2| \leq \rho(A) < 1, \dots, |\lambda_n| \leq \rho(A) < 1$$

$$|1 - \lambda_1| \geq 1 - |\lambda_1| > 0, |1 - \lambda_2| \geq 1 - |\lambda_2| > 0, \dots, |1 - \lambda_n| \geq 1 - |\lambda_n| > 0$$

$$\Rightarrow \det(I - A) = |I - A| = (1 - \lambda_1)(1 - \lambda_2) \cdots (1 - \lambda_n) \neq 0 \Rightarrow (I - A) \text{ 可逆}$$

注: 幂级数 $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} C_k x^k = C_0 + C_1 x + \dots + C_k x^k + \dots$

规定 $A = A_{n \times n}$ 的幂级数为 $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} C_k A^k = C_0 I + C_1 A + \dots + C_k A^k + \dots$

收敛定理: 设 $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} C_k x^k$ 的半径为 R

$$(1) \quad \rho(A) < R \Rightarrow \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} C_k A^k \text{ 绝对收敛}$$

$$(2) \quad \rho(A) > R \Rightarrow \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} C_k A^k \text{ 发散 (无意义)}$$

常用级数公式:

$$\text{由 } f(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} C_k x^k \quad |x| < R \text{ (收敛半径)}$$

$$\Rightarrow f(A) \triangleq \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} C_k A^k \quad \rho(A) < R \text{ (或某 } \|A\| < R)$$

$$(1) \quad f(x) = e^x = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^k}{k!} \quad (R = +\infty)$$

$$f(A) = e^A \triangleq \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{A^k}{k!} \quad (A \text{ 为任一方阵})$$

$$(2) \quad f(x) = \sin x = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k \frac{x^{2k+1}}{(2k+1)!} \quad (R = +\infty)$$

$$f(A) = \sin A \triangleq \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k \frac{A^{2k+1}}{(2k+1)!} \quad (A \text{ 为任一方阵})$$

$$(3) \quad f(x) = \cos x = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k \frac{x^{2k}}{(2k)!} \quad (R = +\infty)$$

$$f(A) = \cos A \triangleq I - \frac{A^2}{2!} + \frac{A^4}{4!} - \frac{A^6}{6!} + \cdots + (-1)^k \frac{A^{2k}}{(2k)!} + \cdots \quad (A \text{ 为任一方阵})$$

$$(4) \quad f(x) = (1-x)^{-1} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} x^k \quad (|x| < 1)$$

$$f(A) = (I - A)^{-1} = I + A + \cdots + A^k + \cdots \quad (\rho(A) < 1)$$

$$(5) \quad f(x) = \ln(1+x) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{k+1} \frac{x^k}{k} \quad (|x| < 1)$$

$$f(A) = \ln(I + A) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{k+1} \frac{A^k}{k} \quad (\rho(A) < 1, \text{ 或 } \|A\| < 1)$$

eg. $A = \begin{pmatrix} \varepsilon & b \\ 0 & \varepsilon \end{pmatrix}, |\varepsilon| < 1, \text{ 求 } \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} A^k$

解: $\rho(A) = |\varepsilon| < 1 \Rightarrow \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} A^k \text{ 收敛}$

$$\text{由公式 } \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} A^k = (I - A)^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} 1-\varepsilon & -b \\ 0 & 1-\varepsilon \end{pmatrix}^{-1} = \frac{1}{(1-\varepsilon)^2} \begin{pmatrix} 1-\varepsilon & b \\ 0 & 1-\varepsilon \end{pmatrix}$$

eg. $A = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \text{ 求 } e^A = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(At)^k}{k!}$

解: $A^0 = I, A^1 = A, A^2 = AA = -I, A^3 = A(A^2) = -A, A^4 = A^2 A^2 = I, \dots$

$$\begin{aligned}
e^A &= e^{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & t \\ -t & 0 \end{pmatrix}} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(At)^k}{k!} \\
&= \left(I + \frac{A^2 t^2}{2!} + \frac{A^4 t^4}{4!} + \frac{A^6 t^6}{6!} + \dots \right) + \left(\frac{At}{1!} + \frac{A^3 t^3}{3!} + \frac{A^5 t^5}{5!} + \dots \right) \\
&= \left(I - \frac{t^2}{2!} I + \frac{t^4}{4!} I - \frac{t^6}{6!} I + \dots \right) + \left(tA - \frac{t^3}{3!} A + \frac{t^5}{5!} A - \frac{t^7}{7!} A + \dots \right) \\
&= \left(I - \frac{t^2}{2!} + \frac{t^4}{4!} - \frac{t^6}{6!} + \dots \right) I + \left(t - \frac{t^3}{3!} + \frac{t^5}{5!} - \frac{t^7}{7!} + \dots \right) A \\
&= (\cos t)I + (\sin t)A = \begin{pmatrix} \cos t & 0 \\ 0 & \cos t \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \sin t \\ -\sin t & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\
\therefore e^A &= \begin{pmatrix} \cos t & \sin t \\ -\sin t & \cos t \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \text{正交阵}
\end{aligned}$$

引理： 设 $f(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} C_k x^k$, $|x| < R$

若 $\sigma(A) = \{\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n\}$ 全体特征值

则 $f(A)$ 的全体特征值为 $\sigma(f(A)) = \{f(\lambda_1), f(\lambda_2), \dots, f(\lambda_n)\}$

且行列式: $\det(f(A)) = |f(A)| = f(\lambda_1)f(\lambda_2)\dots f(\lambda_n)$

Pf: 由许尔公式: $P^{-1}AP = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & * \\ & \lambda_2 & \\ O & & \ddots \\ & & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix}$

$$C_k (P^{-1}AP)^k = P^{-1}C_k A^k P = \begin{pmatrix} C_k \lambda_1^k & & *' \\ & C_k \lambda_2^k & \\ O & & \ddots \\ & & & C_k \lambda_n^k \end{pmatrix} \quad k = 0, 1, 2, \dots$$

相加: $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} C_k (P^{-1}AP)^k = P^{-1} \left(\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} C_k A^k \right) P = \begin{pmatrix} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} C_k \lambda_1^k & & *'' \\ & \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} C_k \lambda_2^k & \\ O & & \ddots \\ & & & \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} C_k \lambda_n^k \end{pmatrix}$

$$\Rightarrow f(P^{-1}AP) = P^{-1}f(A)P = \begin{pmatrix} f(\lambda_1) & & & \\ & f(\lambda_2) & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ & & & f(\lambda_n) \end{pmatrix} \begin{matrix} (*) \\ \\ \\ \end{matrix} \rightarrow \text{上三角阵}$$

$$\Rightarrow f(A) \text{ 的全体特征值为 } \sigma(f(A)) = \{f(\lambda_1), f(\lambda_2), \dots, f(\lambda_n)\}$$

推论: (1) $f(x) = e^x$, $\sigma(A) = \{\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n\}$

$$e^A \text{ 的谱: } \sigma(e^A) = \{e^{\lambda_1}, e^{\lambda_2}, \dots, e^{\lambda_n}\}$$

$$\text{且 } \det(e^A) = |e^A| = e^{\lambda_1} e^{\lambda_2} \dots e^{\lambda_n} = e^{\lambda_1 + \lambda_2 + \dots + \lambda_n} = e^{\text{tr}(A)} = e^{a_{11} + a_{22} + \dots + a_{nn}} \neq 0$$

$$\text{且 } e^A \text{ 可逆, } (e^A)^{-1} = e^{-A}$$

$$(2) f(x) = \sin x \Rightarrow \sigma(\sin A) = \{\sin \lambda_1, \sin \lambda_2, \dots, \sin \lambda_n\}$$

$$\text{且 } \det(\sin A) = (\sin \lambda_1)(\sin \lambda_2) \dots (\sin \lambda_n)$$

可对角阵 (单纯阵) 计算公式:

设 $A = A_{n \times n}$ 可对角 (极小式无重根), 则有:

$$f(A) = f(\lambda_1)G_1 + f(\lambda_2)G_2 + \dots + f(\lambda_s)G_s \quad (f(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} C_k x^k, x < R)$$

其中 $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_s$ 为 A 互异特征值, G_1, G_2, \dots, G_s 为投影阵 (谱阵), $G_i = \frac{g_i(A)}{g_i(\lambda_i)}$

Ex. 利用投影公式再解 P208 例 5 并求 e^A 、P206 例 3 并求 e^A

Ex. P2476、8

$$\text{Ex. } A = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \text{ 用定义求 } e^A$$

求 $f(A)$: 1. L-S 插值公式

2. 待定矩阵法

$$A \text{ 的特征多项式: } c(x) = |\lambda I - A| \quad \text{极小式: } g(x)$$

1. $g(x)$ 有重根

$$(1) \text{ 一个 } k \text{ 重单根 } g(x) = (x - b)^k$$

$$\text{公式: } f(A) = f(b)G + f'(b)F_1 + f''(b)F_2 + \dots + f^{(k-1)}(b)F_{k-1}$$

其中: $G, F_1, F_2, \dots, F_{k-1}$ 固定矩阵 (待定), $f(x)$ 为任意解析式

$$(2) \quad g(x) = (x-a)(x-b)^2$$

$$\text{公式: } f(A) = f(a)G_1 + f(b)G_2 + f'(b)F_1$$

$$(3) \quad g(x) = (x-a)^2(x-b)^2$$

$$\text{公式: } f(A) = f(a)G_1 + f'(a)F_1 + f(b)G_2 + f'(b)F_2$$

$$(4) \quad \text{一般地} \quad g(x) = (x-\lambda_1)^{k_1}(x-\lambda_2)^{k_2} \cdots (x-\lambda_s)^{k_s}$$

2. $g(x)$ 无重根

$$g(x) = (x-\lambda_1)(x-\lambda_2)\cdots(x-\lambda_s)$$

$$\text{公式: } f(A) = f(\lambda_1)G_1 + f(\lambda_2)G_2 + \cdots + f(\lambda_s)G_s$$

$$\text{例 1: } A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \text{ 求 } e^{At}$$

$$\text{解: } |\lambda I - A| = (x-2)^3 \quad \text{极小多项式: } g(x) = (x-2)^2$$

$$\text{公式: } f(A) = f(2)G + f'(2)F \quad \text{其中 } G, F \text{ 为待定阵}$$

$$\text{令 } f(x) = x-2 \quad f'(x) = 1, \text{ 则 } f(A) = A-2I \quad f(2) = 0 \quad f'(2) = 1$$

$$\therefore F = A - 2I$$

$$\text{令 } f(x) = 1 \quad f'(x) = 0, \text{ 则 } f(A) = I \quad f(2) = 1 \quad f'(2) = 0$$

$$\therefore G = I$$

$$\therefore f(A) = f(2)I + f'(2)(A-2I)$$

$$\text{当 } f(x) = e^{xt} \text{ 时, } f'(x) = te^{xt} \quad f(2) = e^{2t} \quad f'(2) = te^{2t}$$

$$e^{At} = e^{2t}I + te^{2t}(A-2I) = e^{2t} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} + te^{2t} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = e^{2t} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ t & 1-t & 1 \\ t & -t & 1+t \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{例 2: } A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 4 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \text{ 求 } e^{At}$$

$$\text{解: 特征多项式: } |\lambda I - A| = (x-1)(x-2)^2$$

$$\text{极小多项式: } g(x) = (x-1)(x-2)^2$$

$$\text{公式 } f(A) = f(1)G_1 + f(2)G_2 + f'(2)F$$

$$\text{令 } f(x) = (x-2)^2, \text{ 则 } f'(x) = 2(x-2) \quad f(1) = 1 \quad f(2) = 0 \quad f'(2) = 0$$

$$\therefore G_1 = (A-2I)^2$$

$$\text{令 } f(x) = (x-1)(x-2), \text{ 则 } f'(x) = 2x-3 \quad f(1)=0 \quad f(2)=0 \quad f'(2)=1$$

$$\therefore F = (A-I)(A-2I)$$

$$\text{令 } f(x) = (x-1), \text{ 则 } f'(x) = 1 \quad f(1)=0 \quad f(2)=1 \quad f'(2)=1$$

$$\therefore A-I = G_2 + F \Rightarrow G_2 = (A-I)(3I-A)$$

$$\therefore f(A) = f(1)(A-2I)^2 + f(2)(A-I)(3I-A) + f'(2)(A-I)(A-2I)$$

$$\text{当 } f(x) = e^{xt} \text{ 时, } f'(x) = te^{xt} \quad f(1) = e^t \quad f(2) = e^{2t} \quad f'(2) = te^{2t}$$

$$\therefore e^{At} = e^t(A-2I)^2 + e^{2t}(A-I)(3I-A) + te^{2t}(A-I)(A-2I)$$

$$\begin{aligned} &= e^t \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 4 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 & -1 \end{pmatrix}^2 + e^{2t} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 4 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & -4 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -3 & 2 \end{pmatrix} + te^{2t} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 4 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 4 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= e^t \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 12 & -4 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -3 & -1 \end{pmatrix} + e^{2t} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -12 & 4 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix} + te^{2t} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 13 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{例: } A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 2 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & -2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \text{ 求 } e^{At}$$

$$\text{解: 特征多项式: } |\lambda I - A| = x(x-1)^2$$

$$\text{极小多项式: } g(x) = x(x-1)$$

$$\text{公式: } f(A) = f(0)G_1 + f(1)G_2$$

$$\text{令 } f(x) = x-1, \text{ 则 } f(0) = -1 \quad f(1) = 0$$

$$\therefore G_1 = I - A$$

$$\text{令 } f(x) = x, \text{ 则 } f(0) = 0 \quad f(1) = 1$$

$$\therefore G_2 = A$$

$$\therefore f(A) = f(0)(I-A) + f(1)A$$

$$\text{当 } f(x) = e^{xt} \text{ 时, } f(0) = 1 \quad f(1) = e^t$$

$$\therefore f(A) = (I-A) + e^t A$$

$$\text{习题: 1. } A = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 1 & 0 \\ -4 & 3 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix}, \text{ 求 } f(A) \text{ 的公式, 再求 } e^{At}$$

$$2. A = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 & 8 \\ 3 & -1 & 6 \\ -2 & 0 & -5 \end{pmatrix}, \text{ 求 } f(A) \text{ 的公式, 再求 } e^{At}$$

$$3. A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 3 & 2 \\ 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}, \text{ 求 } f(A) \text{ 的公式, 再求 } e^{At}$$

$$4. A = \begin{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 1 \\ 0 & -2 \end{pmatrix} & \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} & \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 1 \\ 0 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \end{pmatrix}, \text{ 求 } f(A)$$

例: 设 A 有极小多项式 $g(x) = (x-b)^k \quad (k \leq n)$

求公式 $f(A) = f(b)G + f'(b)F_1 + f''(b)F_2 + \dots + f^{(k-1)}(b)F_{k-1}$ 中

待定矩阵 $G, F_1, F_2, \dots, F_{k-1}$

解: $f(x) \equiv 1 \quad f(b) = f'(b) = \dots = f^{(k-1)}(b) = 0$

$$\therefore G = I$$

$$f(x) = (x-b) \quad f(b) = 1 \quad f(b) = f'(b) = \dots = f^{(k-1)}(b) = 0$$

$$\therefore F_1 = A - bI$$

$$f(x) = (x-b)^2 \quad f''(b) = 2 \quad f(b) = f'(b) = \dots = f^{(k-1)}(b) = 0$$

$$\therefore (A - bI)^2 = 2F_2 \Rightarrow F_2 = \frac{(A - bI)^2}{2!}$$

$$\text{以此类推: } F_{k-1} = \frac{(A - bI)^{k-1}}{(k-1)!}$$

$$\therefore f(A) = f(b)I + f'(b)(A - bI) + f''(b)\frac{(A - bI)^2}{2!} + \dots + f^{(k-1)}(b)\frac{(A - bI)^{k-1}}{(k-1)!}$$

$$\text{当 } A = J = \begin{pmatrix} b & 1 & & \\ & b & 1 & \\ & & b & \ddots \\ & & & \ddots & 1 \\ & & & & b \end{pmatrix}_{n \times n} \text{ 时, 极小式: } g(x) = (x-b)^n$$

$$D = A - bI = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & & \\ & 0 & 1 & \\ & & 0 & \ddots \\ & & & \ddots & 1 \\ & & & & 0 \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow D^2 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & & \\ & 0 & 0 & \ddots & \\ & & 0 & \ddots & 1 \\ & & & \ddots & 0 \\ & & & & 0 \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow D^{n-1} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 1 \\ & 0 & 0 & \ddots & \vdots \\ & & 0 & \ddots & 0 \\ & & & \ddots & 0 \\ & & & & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$f(A) = f(b)I + f'(b)D + f''(b)\frac{D^2}{2!} + \cdots + f^{(k-1)}(b)\frac{D^{k-1}}{(k-1)!}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} f(b) & f'(b) & \frac{f''(b)}{2!} & \cdots & \frac{f^{(k-1)}(b)}{(k-1)!} \\ & f(b) & f'(b) & \ddots & \vdots \\ & & f(b) & \ddots & \frac{f''(b)}{2!} \\ & & & \ddots & f'(b) \\ & & & & f(b) \end{pmatrix}$$

引理： $\|A\| < 1$ 或 $\rho(A) < 1$ ，则 $(I - A)$ 可逆

令 $B = I - A$ ， $(A = I - B)$

引理： 若 $\|I - B\| < 1$ ，则 B 可逆

积的求导公式：

$$\frac{d}{dt}(A(t)B(t)C(t)) = \frac{dA(t)}{dt}B(t)C(t) + \frac{dB(t)}{dt}A(t)C(t) + \frac{dC(t)}{dt}A(t)B(t)$$

$$\text{指数求导公式：} \frac{de^{At}}{dt} = e^{At}A = Ae^{At}$$

$$\text{Pf: } e^{At} = I + At + \frac{A^2t^2}{2!} + \frac{A^3t^3}{3!} + \cdots$$

$$\frac{d}{dt}(e^{At}) = 0 + A + \frac{A^2t}{1!} + \frac{A^3t^2}{2!} + \frac{A^4t^3}{3!} \cdots$$

$$= A \left(I + At + \frac{A^2t^2}{2!} + \frac{A^3t^3}{3!} + \cdots \right) = \left(I + At + \frac{A^2t^2}{2!} + \frac{A^3t^3}{3!} + \cdots \right) A \\ = Ae^{At} = e^{At}A$$

Euler 公式： $(i = \sqrt{-1})$

$$e^{iA} = \cos A + i \sin A \quad \left(\text{利用 } e^{iA} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(iA)^k}{k!} \right)$$

用 $-A$ 代替 A : $e^{iA} = \cos A - i\sin A$ 两式相加减

$$\cos A = \frac{e^{iA} + e^{-iA}}{2} \quad \sin A = \frac{e^{iA} - e^{-iA}}{2}$$

$$\frac{d \cos At}{dt} = -(\sin At)A = -A(\sin At) \quad \frac{d \sin At}{dt} = (\cos At)A = A(\cos At)$$

$f(A)$ 的算法:

1. A 可对角化, 极小式 $g(x) = (x - \lambda_1)(x - \lambda_2) \dots (x - \lambda_s)$ 无重根

$$\Rightarrow f(A) = f(\lambda_1)G_1 + f(\lambda_2)G_2 + \dots + f(\lambda_s)G_s$$

G_1, G_2, \dots, G_s (固定) 可用公式 $G_i = \frac{g_i(A)}{g_i(\lambda_i)}$ 求出; $f(x)$ 为任一解析式

2. A 不可对角化, 极小式 $g(x)$ 有重根, 可用“待定矩阵法”(广义谱分解公式)

例如: A 的极小式 $g(x) = (x - b)^2$

可令公式: $f(A) = f(b)G + f'(b)F$; G, F 固定 (待定) $f(x)$ 为任一解析式

分别令 $f(x) \equiv 1, f(x) = (x - b)$ 代入 $\Rightarrow G = I, F = (A - bI)$

$$\Rightarrow f(A) = f(b)I + f'(b)(A - bI)$$

再令 $f(x) = e^{tx} \quad f'(x) = te^{tx} \Rightarrow f(A) = e^{At} = \dots$

对角公式: 设 $D = \begin{pmatrix} b_1 & & O \\ & b_2 & \\ O & & \ddots \\ & & & b_n \end{pmatrix}$, 则 $f(D) = \begin{pmatrix} f(b_1) & & O \\ & f(b_2) & \\ O & & \ddots \\ & & & f(b_n) \end{pmatrix}$

Jordan 块公式 $D = \begin{pmatrix} b & 1 & & \\ & b & \ddots & \\ & & \ddots & 1 \\ & & & b \end{pmatrix}_{p \times p}$ (极小式 $g(x) = (x - b)^p$)

$$\text{则 } f(D) = \begin{pmatrix} f(b) & f'(b) & \frac{f''(b)}{2!} & \dots & \frac{f^{(p-1)}(b)}{(p-1)!} \\ & f(b) & f'(b) & \ddots & \vdots \\ & & f(b) & \ddots & \frac{f''(b)}{2!} \\ & & & \ddots & f'(b) \\ & & & & f(b) \end{pmatrix}$$

eg. $B = \begin{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & (0) \end{pmatrix}$, 求 e^B , 令 $f(x) = e^x$, $f(x) = e^x$

$$e^B = \begin{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} e^2 & e \\ 0 & e^2 \end{pmatrix} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & (1) \end{pmatrix}$$

引理: (1) 若 $AB = BA$, 则 $e^A e^B = e^B e^A = e^{A+B}$

(2) $e^{-A} e^A = e^A e^{-A} = e^0 = I$

(3) $AB = BA \Rightarrow e^{At} e^{Bt} = e^{Bt} e^{At} = e^{(A+B)t}$

线性微分方程:

引理: 若 $\frac{dA(t)}{dt} = A'(t) \equiv 0$, 则 $A(t) = C$ (常值矩阵)

1. $\frac{dx}{dt} = Ax$, $x(0) = C$, $x = (x_1(t), x_2(t), \dots, x_n(t))^T$, $A = A_{n \times n}$
2. $\frac{dY}{dt} = AY$, $Y(0) = C_{n \times n}$, $Y = (y_{ij}(t))$
3. $\frac{dY}{dt} = YA$, $Y(0) = C_{n \times n}$, $Y = (y_{ij}(t))$
4. $\frac{dY}{dt} = AY + YB$, $Y(0) = F_{n \times n}$

引理: $\frac{dY}{dt} = AY + YB$, $Y(0) = F$ 的解公式为: $Y = e^{At} F e^{Bt}$

Pf: 利用 $\frac{de^{-At} Y}{dt} = -Ae^{-At} Y + e^{-At} \frac{dY}{dt}$, $\frac{dYe^{-Bt}}{dt} = \frac{dY}{dt} e^{-Bt} - Ye^{-Bt} B$

若 Y 为 $\frac{dY}{dt} = AY + YB$ 的解

$$\Rightarrow e^{-At} \frac{dY}{dt} e^{-Bt} = Ae^{-At} Ye^{-Bt} + e^{-At} Ye^{-Bt} B$$

$$\Rightarrow e^{-At} \frac{dY}{dt} e^{-Bt} - (Ae^{-At}) Ye^{-Bt} - e^{-At} Y(e^{-Bt} B) = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{d}{dt} (e^{-At} Ye^{-Bt}) \equiv 0 \Rightarrow e^{-At} Ye^{-Bt} \equiv C$$

$$\text{令 } t = 0 \Rightarrow e^0 Y(0) e^0 \equiv C \Rightarrow IY(0)I = C$$

$$\Rightarrow C = Y(0) = F \Rightarrow Y = e^{At} C e^{Bt} = e^{At} F e^{Bt} \quad (\text{有唯一解})$$

再验证: $Y = e^{At} F e^{Bt}$ 适合 $\frac{dY}{dt} = AY + YB$ (且 $Y(0) = F$)

特别: $B = 0$ 时, $\frac{dY}{dt} = AY$ 有解 $Y = e^{At} F$

$A = 0$ 时, $\frac{dY}{dt} = AY$ 有解 $Y = e^{At} F$

同理: 可知 $\frac{dx}{dt} = Ax$, $x(0) = C$, $x = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) \in R^n$, 有唯一解 $x = e^{At} \vec{C}$

Ex.1. $A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$, 求解齐次方程 $\frac{dx}{dt} = Ax$, $x(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$

2. $A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 2 & 1 \\ -2 & 6 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 4 \end{pmatrix}$, 求解齐次方程 $\frac{dx}{dt} = Ax$, $x(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$

§6 广义逆 A^+

A^+ 定义: 若 $A = A_{m \times n}$, 若有 $X = X_{n \times m}$ 使得:

$$(1) AXA = A \quad (2) XAX = X \quad (3) (AX)^H = AX \quad (4) (XA)^H = XA$$

((3)、(4) 为 Hermite 条件)

则称 X 为 A 的一个“+号”广义逆, 记为 A^+

特别: $A = A_{n \times n}$ 为可逆时, $A^+ = A^{-1}$

$$A = 0_{n \times n} \text{ 时, } A^+ = 0_{n \times n}$$

唯一定理: 若 $A = A_{m \times n}$ 则, A^+ 是唯一的

(若有 2 个 A^+ : X 与 Y 适合 (1) (2) (3) (4) $\Rightarrow X = Y$)

A^+ 存在公式: 设短奇异分解: $A = P_1 \Delta Q_1^H$ $\Delta = \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{\lambda_1} & & & 0 \\ & \sqrt{\lambda_2} & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ 0 & & & \sqrt{\lambda_r} \end{pmatrix}$

$$r = \text{rank}(A) \quad P_1^H P_1 = I_r \quad Q_1^H Q_1 = I_r$$

$$\text{则 } A^+ = Q_1 \Delta^{-1} P_1^H$$

Check: (1) $AA^+A = (P_1 \Delta Q_1^H Q_1 \Delta^{-1} P_1^H) P_1 \Delta Q_1^H = P_1 \Delta Q_1^H = A$

(2) $A^+AA^+ = A^+$

$$(3) \quad AA^+ = P_1 P_1^H \quad (\text{Hermite})$$

$$(4) \quad A^+ A = Q_1 Q_1^H \quad (\text{Hermite})$$

公式: 若 $A = P_1 \Delta Q_1^H$, 则 $A^+ = Q_1 \Delta^{-1} P_1^H$ (短奇异分解)

Ex. $A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$, 利用奇异(短)分解求 A^+

(M-B) 广义逆 A^+

(Moore, Benrose) A^+ 的 4 个条件: $A = A_{m \times n}$ $A^+ = (\dots)_{n \times m}$

$$(1) \quad AA^+A = A \quad (2) \quad A^+AA^+ = A^+ \quad (3) \quad (AA^+)^H = AA^+ \quad (4) \quad (A^+A)^H = A^+A$$

注: A^+ 是唯一的

A^+ 奇异分解公式: 设 $A = P_1 \Delta Q_1^H$ (短分解), 则 $A^+ = Q_1 \Delta^{-1} P_1^H$

Eg. $A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad \lambda_1 = 4, \quad \sqrt{\lambda_1} = 2 \quad \Delta = (2)$

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ 0 \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \end{pmatrix} (2) \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow A^+ = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ 1 \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \end{pmatrix} (2)^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & 0 & \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{4} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{4} & 0 & \frac{1}{4} \\ \frac{1}{4} & 0 & \frac{1}{4} \end{pmatrix}$$

注: 奇异值对误差不敏感(很稳定)

引理: 齐次方程 $Ax = 0$ 的通解为: $\xi = (I_n - A^+A)y, \quad \forall y \in C^n$

Pf: 若 $\xi = (I_n - A^+A)y \Rightarrow A\xi = A(I_n - A^+A)y = (A - AA^+A)y = (A - A)y = 0$

另外: 若 ξ 为 $Ax = 0$ 的解, $A\xi = 0$

写 $\xi = \xi - 0 = I_n \xi - A^+ A \xi \Rightarrow \xi = (I_n - A^+A)\xi$ (适合公式)

引理: 非齐次方程 $Ax = b$ (若有解) 通解为:

$$x = (A^+b) + (I_n - A^+A)y \quad \forall y$$

Pf: 只须证 $x_0 = A^+b$ 为 $Ax = b$ 的解

$$\because Ax_0 = A(A^+b) \quad \because Ax = b \text{ 有解}$$

可写 $b = A\xi$ 代入

$$\Rightarrow Ax_0 = A(A^+b) = AA^+(A\xi) = (AA^+A)\xi = b$$

注: $AA^+b = b \Leftrightarrow Ax = b$ 有解

问: 若 $Ax = b$ 有解, 哪个解的长度最佳 (最小)

$$x = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)^T \in C^n \quad |x|^2 = x^H x = |x_1|^2 + |x_2|^2 + \dots + |x_n|^2$$

引理: 令 $x_0 = A^+b$, 则 $x_0 \perp y$ $y \in \mathcal{N}(A) = \{x | Ax = 0\}$

$$\text{Pf: } \because \text{内积}(y, x_0) = x_0^H y = (A^+b)^H y = [(A^+A)A^+b]^H y$$

$$= (A^+b)^H (A^+A)^H y = (A^+b)^H (A^+A)y = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow x_0 \perp y \quad (x_0 \perp \mathcal{N}(A))$$

最小长度解公式:

若 $Ax = b$ 有解, 则 $x_0 = A^+b$ 为最小长度解

$$\text{Pf: 用 } Ax = b \text{ 通解 } x = x_0 + y \quad \forall y \in \mathcal{N}(A)$$

$$\because x_0 \perp y \text{ 用勾股定理: } |x|^2 = |x_0 + y|^2 = |x_0|^2 + |y|^2 \geq |x_0|^2$$

$$\therefore |x_0|^2 \text{ 为最小}$$

Q: 若 $Ax = b$ 无解 (矛盾方程)

$$\text{求一个 } x_0 \text{ 使得 } |Ax_0 - b|^2 \text{ 为最小, 即 } |Ax_0 - b|^2 = \min \{ |Ax - b|^2 | x \in C^n \}$$

$$\text{令值域 (相空间) } \mathcal{R}(A) = \{Ay | y \in C^n\} \text{ (为线形空间) } \subset C^m$$

$$\text{引理: } \forall A = A_{m \times n}, \forall b \in C^m, \text{ 则 } x_0 = A^+b \text{ 适合 } A^H x_0 - A^H b = 0$$

$$(\text{即 } A^H Ax = A^H b \text{ 有一个解 } x_0 = A^+b)$$

$$\text{Pf: } A^H Ax_0 = A^H AA^+b = A^H (AA^+)b = (AA^+A)^H b = (A)^H b \Rightarrow A^H Ax_0 = A^H b$$

$$\text{推论: } \forall A = A_{m \times n}, \forall b \in C^m \Rightarrow A^H Ax = A^H b \text{ 必有解 } (x_0 = A^+b)$$

极小二乘解定理: $x_0 = A^+b$ 为 $Ax = b$ 的一个极小二乘解

$$\text{引理: 设 } x_0 = A^+b, \text{ 则 } (Ax_0 - b) \perp Ay \quad \forall y$$

Pf: 内积: $(Ax_0 - b, Ay) = (Ay)^H(Ax_0 - b) = y^H A^H(Ax_0 - b) = y^H(A^H Ax_0 - A^H b) = 0$

定理 Pf: $\because Ax - b = (Ax_0 - b) + (Ax - Ax_0) = (Ax_0 - b) + A(x - x_0)$

$\because (Ax_0 - b) \perp A(x - x_0)$ 勾股定理

$$\Rightarrow |Ax - b|^2 = |Ax_0 - b|^2 + |A(x - x_0)|^2 \geq |Ax_0 - b|^2 \quad (\text{为极小值})$$

“小二解”公式: $Ax = b$ 的全体小二解为 $x = x_0 + y \quad y \in \mathcal{N}(A)$

$$\text{或 } x = x_0 + (I_n - A^+ A)y \quad \forall y \quad (Ay = 0)$$

$$\because Ax - b = A(x_0 + y) - b = Ax_0 + Ay - b = Ax_0 - b \Rightarrow |Ax - b|^2 = |Ax_0 - b|^2 \quad (\text{极小})$$

最佳小二解 (唯一): $x_0 = A^+ b$ 是 $Ax = b$ 的最小长度“小二解”

Pf: \because 全体小二解为 $x = x_0 + y \quad (Ay = 0)$

$$\text{利用 } x_0 \perp y \Rightarrow |x|^2 = |x_0|^2 + |y|^2 \geq |x_0|^2 \quad (\text{最佳})$$

注: 若 A 为高阵 $\text{rank}(A) = n$, 则只有解小二解

Ex.P3152、3、4 (6)

$$\text{Ex. (1)} \quad A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix}, \quad b = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \text{求 } Ax = b \text{ 的最佳小二解}$$

$$(2) \quad A \text{ 同上}, \quad b = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \text{用 } A^+ \text{ 表示 } Ax = b \text{ 的通解}$$

A^+ 性质与计算 ($P_1^H P_1 = I_r = Q_1^H Q_1$)

$$1. A^+ \text{ 短分解公式: 若 } A = P_1 \Delta Q_1^H, \quad \Delta = \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{\lambda_1} & & & 0 \\ & \sqrt{\lambda_2} & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ 0 & & & \sqrt{\lambda_r} \end{pmatrix}, \quad \text{则 } A^+ = Q_1 \Delta^{-1} P_1^H$$

$$\text{满分解公式: } A = BC \text{ (满分解)} \Rightarrow A^+ = C^+ B^+ \quad \begin{pmatrix} C^+ = C_R = C^H (C C^H)^{-1} \\ B^+ = B_L = (B^H B)^{-1} B^H \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{性质: (4 个条件: } AA^+A = A \quad A^+AA^+ = A^+ \quad AA^+ = (AA^+)^H \quad A^+A = (A^+A)^H)$$

$$\text{rank}(A^+) = \text{rank}(A) = \text{rank}(A^H) \quad \text{rank}(AA^+) = \text{rank}(A^+A) = \text{rank}(A)$$

$$\text{Pf: } A^+ = A^+ AA^+ \Rightarrow \text{rank}(A^+) \leq \text{rank}(A), \quad \text{同理: } \text{rank}(A) \leq \text{rank}(A^+)$$

A^+A 、 AA^+ 都半正定

Pf: $\because (AA^+)^2 = AA^+ \Rightarrow f(x) = x^2 - x$ 为 AA^+ 的 0 化式

AA^+ 的特征值只有 1 或 0 (含重复)

$$\Rightarrow AA^+ \sim \begin{pmatrix} \underbrace{1}_{r \uparrow} & & & & & \\ & \ddots & & & & \\ & & 1 & & & \\ & & & 0 & & \\ & 0 & & & \ddots & \\ & & & & & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \text{ 且 } AA^+ \text{ 为 Hermite} \Rightarrow AA^+ \text{ 为半正定}$$

$$(A^+)^+ = A$$

$$(kA)^+ = \frac{1}{k} A^+ \quad (k \neq 0)$$

$$(D, 0)^+ = \begin{pmatrix} D^+ \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} D \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}^+ = (D^+, 0)$$

规定: 数 k 的 $k^+ \triangleq \begin{cases} 0 & k = 0 \\ \frac{1}{k} & k \neq 0 \end{cases}$ (特别: $0^+ = 0$)

$$\text{对角公式: } \begin{pmatrix} k_1 & & & O \\ & k_2 & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ O & & & k_n \end{pmatrix}^+ = \begin{pmatrix} k_1^+ & & & O \\ & k_2^+ & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ O & & & k_n^+ \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{令 } D = \begin{pmatrix} k_1 & & & O \\ & k_2 & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ O & & & k_n \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow D^+ D = D D^+$$

$$\text{准对角公式: } \begin{pmatrix} A_1 & & & O \\ & A_2 & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ O & & & A_s \end{pmatrix}_{m \times n}^+ = \begin{pmatrix} A_1^+ & & & O \\ & A_2^+ & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ O & & & A_s^+ \end{pmatrix}_{n \times m}$$

\mathcal{U} 分解公式: 设 PQ 为 \mathcal{U} 阵, 则 $(PAQ)^+ = Q^+ A^+ P^+ = Q^{-1} A^+ P^{-1}$

QR 高阵分解公式: 设 $A = A_{m \times r}$ 为高阵, 且 $A = QR$ ($R = R_{r \times r}$, Q 为次 \mathcal{U})

$$\text{则 } A^+ = R^+ Q^+ = R^{-1} Q^H$$

秩 1 公式: 若 $\text{rank}(A) = 1$, 则 $A^+ = \frac{1}{\text{tr}(A^H A)} A^H = \frac{1}{\sum |a_{ij}|^2} A^H$

引理: $A = (a_{ij})_{m \times n}$, 则

$$(1) \operatorname{tr}(A^H A) = \operatorname{tr}(A A^H) = \sum |a_{ij}|^2 = \|A\|_F^2$$

$$(2) \operatorname{rank}(A^H A) = \operatorname{rank}(A A^H) = \operatorname{rank}(A)$$

$$(3) A^H A, A A^H \text{ 半正定}$$

$$\text{设 } A^H A \sim \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & & O \\ & \lambda_2 & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ O & & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix} \quad \lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n \geq 0$$

$$\operatorname{tr}(A^H A) = \lambda_1 + \lambda_2 + \dots + \lambda_n$$

$$\text{Pf: } \operatorname{rank}(A) = 1 \Rightarrow A^H A \sim \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & & O \\ & 0 & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ O & & & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad \lambda_1 > 0 \quad (\sqrt{\lambda_1} \text{ 为奇异值})$$

$$\Rightarrow \lambda_1 = \lambda_1 + 0 + \dots + 0 = \operatorname{tr}(A^H A) = \sum |a_{ij}|^2$$

$$\text{由短分解: } A = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 \\ a_2 \\ \vdots \\ a_m \end{pmatrix} (\sqrt{\lambda_1})(b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n) \quad p_1 = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 \\ a_2 \\ \vdots \\ a_m \end{pmatrix} \quad q^H = (b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n) \text{ 为次 } \mathcal{U}$$

$$(p_1^H p_1 = 1 = q_1^H q_1) \quad \text{写 } A = p_1(\sqrt{\lambda_1})q_1^H \Rightarrow A^H = q_1(\sqrt{\lambda_1})^{-1} p_1^H$$

$$\text{且 } A^{-1} = q_1(\sqrt{\lambda_1})^{-1} p_1^H = \frac{1}{\lambda_1} (q_1(\sqrt{\lambda_1}) p_1^H)$$

$$A^+ = \frac{1}{\lambda_1} A^H = \frac{1}{\operatorname{tr}(A^H A)} A^H = \frac{1}{\sum |a_{ij}|^2} A^H$$

$$\text{Eg. } A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 \\ -1 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \quad \operatorname{rank}(A) = A^+ = \frac{1}{1^2 + 2^2 + 1^2 + 2^2} A^H \Rightarrow A^+ = \frac{1}{10} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 2 & 0 & -2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{Eg. } A = \begin{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} & O \\ O & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ -1 & -2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \end{pmatrix}_{4 \times 6} \Rightarrow A^+ = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{4} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} & O \\ O & \frac{1}{12} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 2 & -2 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \end{pmatrix}_{6 \times 4}$$

Ex. A 为正规 $\Rightarrow A^+A = AA^+$, 且 $(A^+)^k = (A^k)^+ (A^+)^k = (A^k)^+$

$$\because A = QDQ^H = Q \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & O \\ & \lambda_2 & \\ O & & \ddots \\ & & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix} Q^H \Rightarrow A^+ = QD^+Q^H = Q \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1^+ & & O \\ & \lambda_2^+ & \\ O & & \ddots \\ & & & \lambda_n^+ \end{pmatrix} Q^H$$

$$\text{Eg. } A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{rank}(A) = 2, \text{ 求奇异值、} A^+$$

$$A^H = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad A^H A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \quad \lambda_1 = 3, \lambda_2 = 1 \quad \text{奇异值为 } \sqrt{3}, 1$$

$$\lambda_1 = 3 \text{ 的特征向量为 } \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad \lambda_2 = 1 \text{ 的特征向量为 } \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{短奇异分解: } A = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\sqrt{6}} & \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{6}} & -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ \frac{2}{\sqrt{6}} & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{3} & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \Rightarrow A^+ &= \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} (\sqrt{3})^{-1} & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\sqrt{6}} & \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{6}} & -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ \frac{2}{\sqrt{6}} & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\sqrt{18}} & \frac{1}{\sqrt{18}} & \frac{2}{\sqrt{18}} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \frac{1}{6} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 \\ 3 & -3 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{6} \begin{pmatrix} 4 & -2 & 2 \\ -2 & 4 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

解法 2: 用满分解 $A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} (I_r) \Rightarrow A^+ = A_L = (A^H A)^{-1} A^H$

$$A^+ = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}^{-1} A^H = \frac{1}{3} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{3} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 & 1 \\ -1 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}^{-1} = \frac{1}{ad-bc} \begin{pmatrix} d & -b \\ -c & a \end{pmatrix}$$

Eg. $A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$, $\text{rank}(A) \neq 1$

$$\Rightarrow A = QR = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} R \Rightarrow R = Q^T A = \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{5} & \sqrt{5} \\ 0 & \sqrt{5} \end{pmatrix} = \sqrt{5} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

(Q 为次 $\not\approx$ $Q^H Q = I_r$)

$$\Rightarrow A^+ = Q^+ R^+ = Q^{-1} R^H = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ \sqrt{5} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}^{-1} \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 \\ 2 & 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{5} \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 3 \\ 2 & 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

公式: $A^+ = (A^H A)^+ A^H$, $A^+ = A^H (A A^H)^+ (A^H)^+ = (A^+)^H$

Pf: 用短分解: $A = P_1 \Delta Q_1^H$ $A^H = Q_1 (\Delta) P_1^H$ $A^+ = Q_1 (\Delta)^{-1} P_1^H$

$$A^H A = (Q_1 \Delta P_1^H) (P_1 \Delta Q_1^H) = Q_1 \Delta^2 Q_1^H$$

$$\Rightarrow (A^H A)^{-1} = Q_1 \Delta^{-2} Q_1^H \Rightarrow (A^H A)^+ A^H = Q_1 \Delta^{-2} Q_1^H (Q_1 \Delta P_1^H)$$

应用: $\because A^H A$ 为 Hermite 阵

$$A^H A = \lambda_1 G_1 + \lambda_2 G_2 + \dots + \lambda_s G_s \quad (\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_s \text{ 互异})$$

$$(G_1^H = G_1, G_2^H = G_2, \dots, G_s^H = G_s)$$

$$\Rightarrow (A^H A)^+ = \lambda_1^+ G_1 + \lambda_2^+ G_2 + \dots + \lambda_s^+ G_s$$

$$\Rightarrow A^+ = (A^H A)^+ A^H = (\lambda_1^+ G_1 + \lambda_2^+ G_2 + \dots + \lambda_s^+ G_s) A^H$$

Ex. 若 A 为正规 (或 Hermite) 且 有谱分解 $A = \lambda_1 G_1 + \lambda_2 G_2 + \dots + \lambda_s G_s$

$$(G_1^H = G_1, G_2^H = G_2, \dots, G_s^H = G_s)$$

$$\text{则 } A^+ = \lambda_1^+ G_1 + \lambda_2^+ G_2 + \dots + \lambda_s^+ G_s$$

但：对一般可对角阵 $A = \lambda_1 G_1 + \lambda_2 G_2 + \dots + \lambda_s G_s$ ， $A^+ \neq \lambda_1^+ G_1 + \lambda_2^+ G_2 + \dots + \lambda_s^+ G_s$

Ex. $A = (1, 1)$, $B = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$, 验证 $(AB)^+ \neq B^+ A^+$

但对满分解 $A = BC \Rightarrow A^+ = (BC)^+ = C^+ B^+$

§7 直积拉直及应用

定义：设 $A = (a_{ij})_{m \times n}$ $B = (b_{ij})_{p \times q}$

规定 $A \otimes B \triangleq \begin{pmatrix} a_{11}B & a_{12}B & \cdots & a_{1n}B \\ a_{21}B & a_{22}B & \cdots & a_{2n}B \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{m1}B & a_{m2}B & \cdots & a_{mn}B \end{pmatrix}_{(mp) \times (nq)}$ 叫 A 与 B 的直积（张量积）

注： $A \otimes B$ 记为 $\underline{(a_{ij}B)}$

Eg. $A = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}$ $B = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$

$$A \otimes B = \begin{pmatrix} aB & bB \\ cB & dB \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2a & 2b \\ 3a & 3b \\ 2c & 2d \\ 3c & 3d \end{pmatrix} \quad B \otimes A = \begin{pmatrix} 2A \\ 3A \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2a & 2b \\ 2c & 2d \\ 3a & 3b \\ 3c & 3d \end{pmatrix}$$

$$A \otimes B \neq B \otimes A$$

引理： $I_m \otimes I_n = I_{mn} = I_n \otimes I_m$

$$I_m = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & & & O \\ & 1 & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ O & & & 1 \end{pmatrix}_{m \times m} \Rightarrow I_m \otimes I_n = \begin{pmatrix} I_n & & O \\ & I_n & \\ O & & \ddots & \\ & & & I_n \end{pmatrix}$$

性质：

定理：（1）两个上三角阵直积也是上三角阵

（2）对角阵直积也是对角阵

（3） $I_m \otimes I_n = I_{mn} = I_n \otimes I_m$

$$\text{Pf: (1) } A = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & & & * \\ & a_2 & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ O & & & a_n \end{pmatrix}_{n \times n} \quad B = \begin{pmatrix} b_1 & & & * \\ & b_2 & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ O & & & b_p \end{pmatrix}_{p \times p}$$

$$A \otimes B = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 B & & & (*) \\ & a_2 B & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ O & & & a_n B \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a_1 b_1 & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & a_1 b_p \end{pmatrix} & & & (*) \\ & & \ddots & \\ & & & \begin{pmatrix} a_n b_1 & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & a_n b_p \end{pmatrix} \\ O & & & \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{引理 (分块公式): } \begin{pmatrix} A & B \\ C & D \end{pmatrix} \otimes F = \begin{pmatrix} A \otimes F & B \otimes F \\ C \otimes F & D \otimes F \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{Pf: 由定义: } \begin{pmatrix} A & B \\ C & D \end{pmatrix} \otimes F = \begin{pmatrix} (a_{ij}) & (b_{ij}) \\ (c_{ij}) & (d_{ij}) \end{pmatrix} \otimes F = \begin{pmatrix} (a_{ij}F) & (b_{ij}F) \\ (c_{ij}F) & (d_{ij}F) \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} A \otimes F & B \otimes F \\ C \otimes F & D \otimes F \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{但是 } A \otimes (B_1, B_2) \neq (A \otimes B_1, A \otimes B_2)$$

$$\text{定理 (转置公式): (1) } (A \otimes B)^T = A^T \otimes B^T \quad (2) (A \otimes B)^H = A^H \otimes B^H$$

$$\text{Pf: (1) } \therefore (A \otimes B)^T = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11}B & a_{12}B & \cdots & a_{1n}B \\ a_{21}B & a_{22}B & \cdots & a_{2n}B \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{n1}B & a_{n2}B & \cdots & a_{nn}B \end{pmatrix}^T = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11}B^T & a_{21}B^T & \cdots & a_{n1}B^T \\ a_{12}B^T & a_{22}B^T & \cdots & a_{n2}B^T \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{1n}B^T & a_{2n}B^T & \cdots & a_{nn}B^T \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= (A^T) \otimes (B^T) = A^T \otimes B^T$$

$$\text{Eg. } A = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}, \quad B = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow \begin{cases} A \otimes B = \begin{pmatrix} 2a & 2b \\ 3a & 3b \\ 2c & 2d \\ 3c & 3d \end{pmatrix} \\ (A \otimes B)^T = \begin{pmatrix} 2a & 3a & 2c & 3c \\ 2b & 3b & 2d & 3d \end{pmatrix} \end{cases}$$

$$\text{又 } A^T \otimes B^T = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \otimes (2, 3) = \begin{pmatrix} (2a, 3a) & (2c, 3c) \\ (2b, 3b) & (2d, 3d) \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{比较 } (AB)^T = B^T A^T \quad (AB)^H = B^H A^H$$

$$\text{吸收公式: } (A \otimes B)(C \otimes D) = (AC) \otimes (BD) \quad (\text{若 } AC, BD \text{ 有意义})$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Pf: } (A \otimes B)(C \otimes D) &= \begin{pmatrix} a_{11}B & a_{12}B & \cdots & a_{1n}B \\ a_{21}B & a_{22}B & \cdots & a_{2n}B \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{n1}B & a_{n2}B & \cdots & a_{nn}B \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} c_{11}D & c_{12}D & \cdots & c_{1n}D \\ c_{21}D & c_{22}D & \cdots & c_{2n}D \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ c_{n1}D & c_{n2}D & \cdots & c_{nn}D \end{pmatrix} \\
 &= ((a_{i1}B)(c_{1j}D) + (a_{i2}B)(c_{2j}D) + \cdots + (a_{in}B)(c_{nj}D)) \\
 &= \left(\sum_{k=1}^n (a_{ik}B c_{kj}D) \right) = \left(\sum_{k=1}^n (a_{ik} c_{kj})(BD) \right) = \left(\sum_{k=1}^n (a_{ik} c_{kj}) \right) (BD) \\
 &\quad \text{由定义 } (AC) \otimes (BD)
 \end{aligned}$$

推论: (1) $(A_1 \otimes B_1)(A_2 \otimes B_2)(A_3 \otimes B_3) = (A_1 A_2 A_3) \otimes (B_1 B_2 B_3)$

$$(1)' \quad (A_1 \otimes B_1)(A_2 \otimes B_2) \cdots (A_k \otimes B_k) = (A_1 A_2 \cdots A_k) \otimes (B_1 B_2 \cdots B_k)$$

$$(2) \quad A, B \text{ 为方阵} \Rightarrow (A \otimes B)^k = A^k \otimes B^k$$

$$\because (A \otimes B)^k = (A \otimes B)(A \otimes B) \cdots (A \otimes B) = A^k \otimes B^k$$

$$(3) \quad A = A_{m \times m}, B = B_{n \times n} \Rightarrow (A \otimes I_n)(I_m \otimes B) = A \otimes B = (I_m \otimes B)(A \otimes I_n)$$

注: $(A \otimes I_n)$ 与 $(I_m \otimes B)$ 可交换

逆公式: A, B 可逆 $\Rightarrow (A \otimes B)^{-1} = A^{-1} \otimes B^{-1}$

$$\text{Pf: } \because (A \otimes B)(A^{-1} \otimes B^{-1}) = (AA^{-1}) \otimes (BB^{-1}) = (I_m) \otimes (I_n) = I_{mn} \Rightarrow (A \otimes B)^{-1} = A^{-1} \otimes B^{-1}$$

$$\text{注: } \begin{cases} (A \otimes B \otimes C)^T = A^T \otimes B^T \otimes C^T \\ (A \otimes B \otimes C)^H = A^H \otimes B^H \otimes C^H \\ (A \otimes B \otimes C)^{-1} = A^{-1} \otimes B^{-1} \otimes C^{-1} \end{cases} \quad (\text{若 } A, B, C \text{ 都可逆})$$

推论: 若 A, B 为 \mathcal{H} 阵, 则 $(A \otimes B)$ 也为 \mathcal{H} 阵, 且 $(A \otimes B)^H = (A \otimes B)^{-1}$

$$\because A^H = A^{-1}, B^H = B^{-1} \quad (\mathcal{H} \text{ 阵条件})$$

$$\Rightarrow (A \otimes B)^H = A^H \otimes B^H = A^{-1} \otimes B^{-1} = (A \otimes B)^{-1} \Rightarrow (A \otimes B) \text{ 为 } \mathcal{H} \text{ 阵}$$

$$\text{或 } (A \otimes B)^H (A \otimes B) = (A^H \otimes B^H)(A \otimes B) = (A^H A) \otimes (B^H B) = I_m \otimes I_n = I_{mn}$$

$$\text{比较“穿脱公式”：} \begin{cases} (ABC)^T = C^T B^T A^T \\ (ABC)^H = C^H B^H A^H \\ (ABC)^{-1} = C^{-1} B^{-1} A^{-1} \end{cases} \quad (A, B, C \text{ 都可逆})$$

$$\text{Eg.证明: } (1) e^{A \otimes I} = e^A \otimes I \quad (2) e^{I \otimes B} = I \otimes e^B \quad (3) e^{(A \otimes I + I \otimes B)} = e^A \otimes e^B$$

$$\text{Pf: (2) } e^{I \otimes B} \stackrel{\text{定义}}{=} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(I \otimes B)^k}{k!} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{I^k \otimes B^k}{k!} = I \otimes \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{B^k}{k!} = I \otimes e^B$$

$$(3) \because XY = YX \text{ (可交换)} \Rightarrow e^{X+Y} = e^X e^Y = e^Y e^X$$

$$\because (A \otimes I_n)(I_m \otimes B) \text{ 可交换}$$

$$\Rightarrow e^{(A \otimes I + I \otimes B)} = e^{A \otimes I} e^{I \otimes B} = (e^A \otimes I)(I \otimes e^B) \stackrel{\text{吸收}}{=} (e^A) \otimes (e^B) = e^A \otimes e^B$$

$$\text{秩公式: } \text{rank}(A \otimes B) = \text{rank}(A) \cdot \text{rank}(B) \quad A = A_{m \times n}, B = B_{p \times q}$$

$$\text{Pf: 设 } \text{rank}(A) = r, \text{rank}(B) = s$$

$$\text{由标准形公式} \Rightarrow \begin{cases} PAQ = \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \stackrel{\text{记为}}{=} A_1 \\ \tilde{P}B\tilde{Q} = \begin{pmatrix} I_s & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = B_1 \end{cases} \quad P, Q, \tilde{P}, \tilde{Q} \text{ 都可逆}$$

$$\Rightarrow (P \otimes \tilde{P})(A \otimes B)(Q \otimes \tilde{Q}) = (PAQ) \otimes (\tilde{P}B\tilde{Q}) = A_1 \otimes B_1$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} I_r \otimes B_1 & 0 \otimes B_1 \\ 0 \otimes B_1 & 0 \otimes B_1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \left(\begin{matrix} B_1 & & & \\ & B_1 & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ & & & B_1 \end{matrix} \right) & O \\ O & O \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\Rightarrow \text{rank}(A_1 \otimes B_1) = rs \Rightarrow \text{rank}(A \otimes B) = \text{rank}(A) \cdot \text{rank}(B)$$

$$\text{比较 } \text{rank}(AB) \leq \min\{\text{rank}(A), \text{rank}(B)\}$$

引理: 若 $A \sim A_1$ (相似), $B \sim B_1$ (相似), 则 $A \otimes B \sim A_1 \otimes B_1$ (相似)

$$\because P^{-1}AP = A_1, Q^{-1}BQ = B_1 \Rightarrow (P \otimes Q)^{-1}(A \otimes B)(P \otimes Q) = A_1 \otimes B_1$$

$$\text{用许尔公式: } P^{-1}AP = A_1 = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & & \\ & \lambda_2 & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ O & & & \lambda_m \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{matrix} (*) \\ \text{(上三角阵)} \end{matrix}$$

$$Q^{-1}BQ = B_1 = \begin{pmatrix} t_1 & & & \\ & t_2 & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ O & & & t_n \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{matrix} (*) \\ \text{特征值为 } \sigma(B) = \{t_1, t_2, \dots, t_n\} \end{matrix}$$

$$\Rightarrow A \otimes B \sim A_1 \otimes B_1 = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 B_1 & & (*) \\ & \lambda_2 B_1 & \\ & O & \ddots \\ & & & \lambda_m B_1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{且 } A_1 \otimes B_1 = \begin{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 t_1 & & * \\ & \ddots & \\ & & \lambda_1 t_n \end{pmatrix} & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_m t_1 & & * \\ & \ddots & \\ & & \lambda_m t_n \end{pmatrix} \end{pmatrix}$$

引理： 设 $A = A_{m \times m}$ $\sigma(A) = \{\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_m\}$

$$B = B_{n \times n} \quad \sigma(B) = \{t_1, t_2, \dots, t_n\}$$

- (1) $A \otimes B$ 的全体特征值为 mn 个 $\{\lambda_i t_j\}$ $i = 1, 2, \dots, m$ $j = 1, 2, \dots, n$
- (2) $A \otimes I_n + I_m \otimes B$ 的全体特征值为 mn 个 $\{\lambda_i + t_j\}$ $i = 1, 2, \dots, m$ $j = 1, 2, \dots, n$
- (3) $A \otimes I_n - I_m \otimes B$ 的全体特征值为 mn 个 $\{\lambda_i - t_j\}$ $i = 1, 2, \dots, m$ $j = 1, 2, \dots, n$

Pf: (3) $\because (P \otimes Q)^{-1}(A \otimes I_n)(P \otimes Q) = (P^{-1}AP) \otimes (Q^{-1}I_nQ) = A_1 \otimes I_n$

$$(P \otimes Q)^{-1}(I_m \otimes B)(P \otimes Q) = (P^{-1}I_mP) \otimes (Q^{-1}BQ) = I_m \otimes B_1$$

$$\Rightarrow (P \otimes Q)^{-1}(A \otimes I_n + I_m \otimes B)(P \otimes Q) = A_1 \otimes I_n + I_m \otimes B_1$$

$$\Rightarrow A \otimes I_n + I \otimes B_1 \sim A_1 \otimes I_n + I_m \otimes B_1$$

$$\begin{aligned}
& A_1 \otimes I_n + I_m \otimes B_1 \\
&= \begin{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & * \\ & \ddots & \\ O & & \lambda_1 \end{pmatrix} & & * \\ & \ddots & \\ O & & \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_m & & * \\ & \ddots & \\ O & & \lambda_m \end{pmatrix} \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} t_1 & & * \\ & \ddots & \\ O & & t_n \end{pmatrix} & & * \\ & \ddots & \\ O & & \begin{pmatrix} t_1 & & * \\ & \ddots & \\ O & & t_n \end{pmatrix} \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \begin{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 + t_1 & & * \\ & \ddots & \\ O & & \lambda_1 + t_n \end{pmatrix} & & * \\ & \ddots & \\ O & & \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_m + t_1 & & * \\ & \ddots & \\ O & & \lambda_m + t_n \end{pmatrix} \end{pmatrix}
\end{aligned}$$

同理： $A \otimes I_n - I_m \otimes B$ 的特征值为 $\{\lambda_i - t_j\}$

注： $\because B^T$ 与 B 有相同的特征值 $\{t_1, t_2, \dots, t_n\}$

推论： (1) $A^T \otimes I_n + I_m \otimes B^T$ 的全体特征值为 mn 个 $\{\lambda_i + t_j\}$

(2) $A^T \otimes I_n - I_m \otimes B^T$ 的全体特征值为 mn 个 $\{\lambda_i - t_j\}$

直积的特征值： 设方阵 $A = A_{m \times m}$ 、 $B = B_{n \times n}$

令 A 的 m 个特征值（谱） $\sigma(A) = \{\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_m\}$

B 的 n 个特征值（谱） $\sigma(B) = \{t_1, t_2, \dots, t_n\}$

则 (1) $A \otimes B$ 的 mn 个特征值 $\{\lambda_i t_j\}$ $i = 1, 2, \dots, m$ $j = 1, 2, \dots, n$

(2) $A \otimes I_n + I_m \otimes B$ 的 mn 个特征值 $\{\lambda_i + t_j\}$

(3) $A \otimes I_n - I_m \otimes B$ 的 mn 个特征值 $\{\lambda_i - t_j\}$

(2)' $A^T \otimes I_n + I_m \otimes B^T$ 的 mn 个特征值 $\{\lambda_i + t_j\}$

(3)' $A^T \otimes I_n - I_m \otimes B^T$ 的 mn 个特征值 $\{\lambda_i - t_j\}$

推论： $|A \otimes B| = |A|^n |B|^m$

Pf: $\because |A \otimes B| = (\lambda_1 t_1 \cdot \lambda_1 t_2 \cdots \lambda_1 t_n)(\lambda_2 t_1 \cdot \lambda_2 t_2 \cdots \lambda_2 t_n) \cdots (\lambda_m t_1 \cdot \lambda_m t_2 \cdots \lambda_m t_n)$

$$= (\lambda_1^n \cdot \lambda_2^n \cdots \lambda_m^n) (t_1 \cdot t_2 \cdots t_n)^m = (\lambda_1 \cdot \lambda_2 \cdots \lambda_m)^n (t_1 \cdot t_2 \cdots t_n)^m = |A|^n |B|^m$$

Pf1: 用许尔公式 $\Rightarrow P^{-1}AP = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & * \\ & \lambda_2 & \\ O & & \ddots \\ & & & \lambda_m \end{pmatrix} \stackrel{\text{记}}{=} A_1$ (上三角阵)

$$\Rightarrow (P \otimes I_n)^{-1} (A \otimes B) (P \otimes I_n) = (P^{-1}AP) \otimes B = A_1 \otimes B$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 B & & * B \\ & \lambda_2 B & \\ O & & \ddots \\ & & & \lambda_m B \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow |A \otimes B| = |\lambda_1 B| |\lambda_2 B| \cdots |\lambda_m B| = (\lambda_1^n |B|) (\lambda_2^n |B|) \cdots (\lambda_m^n |B|)$$

拉直定义: $A = (a_{ij})_{m \times n}$

规定 $\vec{A} = (a_{11}, a_{12}, \cdots, a_{1n}, a_{21}, a_{22}, \cdots, a_{2n}, \cdots, a_{m1}, a_{m2}, \cdots, a_{mn})^T$ (列向量)

例: $\overrightarrow{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{pmatrix}} = (1, 2, 3, 4)^T = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$

特别: (1) $\alpha = (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)^T$ 为列向量, 则 $\vec{\alpha} = \alpha = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 \\ a_2 \\ \vdots \\ a_n \end{pmatrix}$

(2) 若 $A = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n)$ 为行向量, $\vec{A} = A^T$

设 $A = \begin{pmatrix} A_1 \\ A_2 \\ \vdots \\ A_n \end{pmatrix}$ (按行) $\Rightarrow \vec{A} = (A_1, A_2, \dots, A_n)^T = \begin{pmatrix} A_1^T \\ A_2^T \\ \vdots \\ A_n^T \end{pmatrix}$

注: 拉直是 $C^{m \times n}$ 与 C^{mn} (列空间) 之间的同构 (一一对应)

性质: (1) $\overrightarrow{A+B} = \vec{A} + \vec{B}$ **注:** $\overrightarrow{A_{m \times n}} = \overrightarrow{B_{m \times n}} \Leftrightarrow A_{m \times n} = B_{m \times n}$

(2) $\overrightarrow{kA} = k\vec{A}$

(3) $\frac{d\overrightarrow{A(t)}}{dt} = \frac{d\vec{A(t)}}{dt}$

拉直公式: $\overrightarrow{(ABC)} = (A \otimes C^T) \vec{B}$

Pf: $A = (a_{ij})_{m \times n}$ 、 $B = (b_{ij})_{n \times p}$ 、 $C = (c_{ij})_{p \times q}$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{按行写 } B &= \begin{pmatrix} B_1 \\ B_2 \\ \vdots \\ B_n \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow \vec{B} = \begin{pmatrix} B_1^T \\ B_2^T \\ \vdots \\ B_n^T \end{pmatrix} \in C^{np} \\ \overrightarrow{(ABC)} &= \begin{pmatrix} a_{11}B_1 + a_{12}B_2 + \cdots + a_{1n}B_n \\ a_{21}B_1 + a_{22}B_2 + \cdots + a_{2n}B_n \\ \vdots \\ a_{m1}B_1 + a_{m2}B_2 + \cdots + a_{mn}B_n \end{pmatrix} C = \begin{pmatrix} (a_{11}B_1 + a_{12}B_2 + \cdots + a_{1n}B_n)C \\ (a_{21}B_1 + a_{22}B_2 + \cdots + a_{2n}B_n)C \\ \vdots \\ (a_{m1}B_1 + a_{m2}B_2 + \cdots + a_{mn}B_n)C \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} C^T(a_{11}B_1^T + a_{12}B_2^T + \cdots + a_{1n}B_n^T) \\ C^T(a_{21}B_1^T + a_{22}B_2^T + \cdots + a_{2n}B_n^T) \\ \vdots \\ C^T(a_{m1}B_1^T + a_{m2}B_2^T + \cdots + a_{mn}B_n^T) \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11}C^T & a_{12}C^T & \cdots & a_{1n}C^T \\ a_{21}C^T & a_{22}C^T & \cdots & a_{2n}C^T \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{m1}C^T & a_{m2}C^T & \cdots & a_{mn}C^T \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} B_1^T \\ B_2^T \\ \vdots \\ B_n^T \end{pmatrix} \\ &= (A \otimes C^T) \vec{B} \end{aligned}$$

特例: $\overrightarrow{AY} = \overrightarrow{AYI} = (A \otimes I) \vec{Y}$

$$\overrightarrow{YB} = \overrightarrow{IYB} = (I \otimes B^T) \vec{Y}$$

$$\overrightarrow{AY \pm YB} = (A \otimes I \pm I \otimes B^T) \vec{Y}$$

$$\overrightarrow{AYB + A^2YB^2} = (A \otimes B^T + A^2 \otimes (B^T)^T) \vec{Y} = (A \otimes B^T + (A \otimes B^T)^2) \vec{Y}$$

应用: 求矩阵方程: $AYB = F$ 的解

方程: 先拉直 $(A \otimes B^T) \vec{Y} = \vec{F}$ 再求解

用增广阵 $(A \otimes B^T | \vec{F}) \xrightarrow{\text{行变}} \dots$

补充公式: $(A \otimes B)^+ = A^+ \otimes B^+$ (只须验证 4 个条件)

结论: $AYB = F$ 的最佳小二解为 $Y_0 = A^+ F B^+$

Pf: $\because (A \otimes B^T) \vec{Y} = \vec{F}$ 最佳小二解为 $\vec{Y}_0 = (A \otimes B^T)^+ \vec{F}$

$$\vec{Y}_0 = (A \otimes B^T)^+ \vec{F} = (A^+ \otimes (B^T)^+) \vec{F} = \overrightarrow{(A^+ F B^+)}$$

引理: $A = A_{m \times m}$ 、 $B = B_{n \times n}$

(1) $(A \otimes I_n - I_m \otimes B)$ 可逆 $\Leftrightarrow A, B$ 没有公共特征值 ($\lambda_i \neq t_j$)

或 $(A \otimes I_n - I_m \otimes B^T)$ 可逆 $\Leftrightarrow A, B$ 没有公共特征值

(2) $(A \otimes I_n + I_m \otimes B)$ 可逆 $\Leftrightarrow A, (-B)$ 没有公共特征值 ($\lambda_i \neq -t_j$)

应用: $A = A_{m \times m}, B = B_{n \times n}$

1. $AY - YB = F$ 有唯一解 $\Leftrightarrow (A \otimes I_n - I_m \otimes B)$ 可逆 $\Leftrightarrow A, B$ 无公共特征值

\because 拉直: $(A \otimes I_n - I_m \otimes B^T) \vec{Y} = \vec{F}$

2. $AY - YB = F$ 有唯一解 $\Leftrightarrow A$ 与 $(-B)$ 无公共特征值

Eg. 若 A, B 无公共特征值, 则 $\begin{pmatrix} A & F \\ 0 & B \end{pmatrix}$ 相似于 $\begin{pmatrix} A & 0 \\ 0 & B \end{pmatrix}$

Pf: 令 $P = \begin{pmatrix} I_m & Y \\ 0 & I_n \end{pmatrix}$ (可逆) $P^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} I_m & (-Y) \\ 0 & I_n \end{pmatrix}$

$$\Rightarrow P \begin{pmatrix} A & F \\ 0 & B \end{pmatrix} P^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} A & F + YB - AY \\ 0 & B \end{pmatrix}$$

再求解方程: $F + YB - AY = 0 \Leftrightarrow AY - YB = F$

$\because A, B$ 无公共特征值 \Rightarrow 有唯一解 F 使得 $F + YB - AY = 0$

对于这个 Y : 必有 $P \begin{pmatrix} A & F \\ 0 & B \end{pmatrix} P^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} A & 0 \\ 0 & B \end{pmatrix}$

推广: 若 A 与 B, C 无公共特征值

$$\text{则 } \begin{pmatrix} A & F_1 & F_2 \\ & B & 0 \\ & & C \end{pmatrix} \sim \begin{pmatrix} A & & \\ & B & \\ & & C \end{pmatrix}$$

Ex. 讲义 P3112、9

验证 $(A \otimes B)^+ = A^+ \otimes B^+$